

大学 英 语

(上册)

隋修平 主编

邵明芹 王彩霞 张 宁
张喜秋 王 涛 张传海 编

電子工業出版社·

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京·BEIJING

内 容 简 介

本书根据教育部“高职高专教育英语课程教学基本要求”编写，分为上、下两册，各 14 章，每章一个主题，包括 Section A、Section B 和 Section C 三个部分。Section A 和 Section B 为课文及对应练习；Section C 为语法部分。课文的长度控制在 300~450 词之间，主要目的是训练学生的读写能力。每篇课文后附有问题，这些问题也可做口语练习。

本书可作为高等学校高职高专、大专、本科各专业英语课程教材，也可作为全国英语等级考试及大学英语四六级考试学习辅导教材，还可供广大英语爱好者学习参考。

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有，侵权必究。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

大学英语：全 2 册/隋修平，苗玉娜主编．—北京：电子工业出版社，2011.9

ISBN 978-7-121-14110-2

I. ①大… II. ①隋… ②苗… III. ①英语—高等职业教育—教材 IV. ①H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2011）第 143919 号

策划编辑：王羽佳

责任编辑：郑志宁 特约编辑：王 崧

印 刷：

装 订：

出版发行：电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036

开 本：787×1092 1/16 印张：12.75 字数：425 千字

印 次：2011 年 9 月第 1 次印刷

印 数：5100 册 定价：80.00 元（上、下册）

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题，请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺，请与本社发行部联系，联系及邮购电话：(010)88254888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zlts@phei.com.cn，盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

服务热线：(010)88258888。

前言

根据教育部“高职高专教育英语课程教学基本要求”，考虑到高职高专学生入学时英语水平参差不齐和需要参加全国英语等级考试及大学英语四六级考试的现状，经过充分的调研，在研究、对比和分析了几套同类教材及历年考试真题和模拟题的基础上我们编写了本书。

本书分为上、下两册。上册共 14 章，每章覆盖 1 个主题，包括 Section A、Section B 和 Section C 三个部分。Section A 和 Section B 包括课文及对应练习，Section C 是语法介绍。

课文的长度控制在 300~450 个单词之间，主要目的在于培养学生的读写能力。为了帮助学生加深对课文的理解，每篇课文后附有问题，这些问题也可作为口语练习。

对于课文中出现的单词和短语，给出了单词的国际音标、词性和中文释义。

针对课文的注释主要包括两方面的内容：一是从语法、词汇等方面对课文的难点、重点进行解释；二是补充与该章有关的其他日常用语，扩大学生的知识面。

练习是针对本章的重点内容而设计的，主要目的是巩固课文中出现的重点词汇和短语，同时也补充了一些教学中行之有效的其他题型。

为了扩大学生的知识面，在每章 Section B 中的练习部分，包含了与全国英语等级考试三级或全国大学生英语四级考试有关的完形填空练习及阅读理解，内容大部分与本章主题相关。

Section C 是语法部分。按照考试大纲要求，本套教材选取了重点语法进行系统介绍，帮助学生所学过的语法深入理解和系统化记忆。每个语法项目后附有配套练习。

本书由山东交通学院海运学院组织编写，由隋修平担任主编，对全部书稿及语法进行统筹。隋修平、邵明芹编写第 1~3 章，张传海（济南明湖中学）编写第 4、5 章、张浩杰（河北农业大学海洋学院）编写第 6 章，张宁编写第 7~9 章，王彩霞编写第 10~12 章，张喜秋编写第 13~14 章，胡旭令对词汇进行编辑、王涛对格式及插图进行编辑。

由于编者水平有限且时间仓促，书中难免有疏漏之处，望广大教师、同学批评指正。

编者

2011 年 3 月于威海

目 录

Unit One	LIFE	1
Section A.....	1	
Section B.....	4	
Section C.....	9	
Unit Two	SHOPPING	14
Section A.....	14	
Section B.....	17	
Section C.....	24	
Unit Three	SPORT.....	27
Section A.....	27	
Section B.....	30	
Section C.....	36	
Unit Four	CHARACTER.....	40
Section A.....	40	
Section B.....	44	
Section C.....	50	
Unit Five	TRAFFIC	54
Section A.....	54	
Section B.....	58	
Section C.....	64	
Unit Six	VESSEL	66
Section A.....	66	
Section B.....	69	
Section C.....	74	
Unit Seven	WEATHER AND CLIMATE	77
Section A.....	77	
Section B.....	81	
Section C.....	87	
Unit Eight	TRAVEL	90
Section A.....	90	

Section B.....	95
Section C.....	101
Unit Nine FOOD & DRINK.....	105
Section A.....	105
Section B.....	109
Section C.....	115
Unit Ten FRIENDSHIP	117
Section A.....	117
Section B.....	121
Section C.....	126
Unit Eleven OCCUPATION.....	130
Section A.....	130
Section B.....	134
Section C.....	140
Unit Twelve HOLIDAYS.....	142
Section A.....	142
Section B.....	146
Section C.....	152
Unit Thirteen POLITICS	154
Section A.....	154
Section B.....	157
Section C.....	163
Unit Fourteen FUTURE.....	166
Section A.....	166
Section B.....	169
Section C.....	176
词汇表	180
参考文献	195

Unit One LIFE

Section A



TEXT



Nothing to sell and nothing to buy

It has been said that everyone lives by selling something. In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort. Though it may be possible to measure the value of material goods in terms of money, it is extremely difficult to estimate the true value of the services which people perform for us. There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service. The conditions of society are such that skills have to be paid for in the same way that goods are paid for at a shop. Everyone has something to sell.

Tramps seem to be the only exception to this general rule. Beggars almost sell themselves as human beings to arouse the pity of passers-by. But real tramps are not beggars. They have nothing to sell and require nothing from others. In seeking independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity. A tramp may ask you for money, but he will never ask you to feel sorry for him. He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences. He may never be sure where the next meal is coming from, but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people. His few material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease. By having to sleep in the open, he gets far closer to the world of nature than most of us ever do. He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive; he may even, in times of real need, do a little work; but he will never sacrifice his freedom. We often speak of tramps with contempt and put them in the same class as beggars, but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care?



QUESTIONS

1. What is the most important thing for a tramp?
2. Which of the two is it easier to estimate in terms of money: the value of material goods or the value of services?

3. How do beggars arouse the pity of passers-by?
4. How do tramps differ from beggars?



NEW WORDS

philosopher [fɪ'lɒsəfɪ]	<i>n.</i>	哲学家
wisdom ['wɪzdəm]	<i>n.</i>	智慧
priest [pri:st]	<i>n.</i>	牧师
spiritual ['spɪrɪtʃuəl]	<i>a.</i>	精神上的
grudge [grɪdʒ]	<i>v.</i>	不愿给, 舍不得给
surgeon ['sɜ:dʒən]	<i>n.</i>	外科大夫
passer-by	<i>n.</i>	过路人 (复数 passers-by)
dignity ['dɪgnəti]	<i>n.</i>	尊严
deliberately [dɪ'lɪbərətli]	<i>ad.</i>	故意地
consequence ['kɒnsɪkwəns]	<i>n.</i>	后果, 结果
afflict [ə'flɪkt]	<i>v.</i>	使苦恼, 折磨
ease [i:z]	<i>n.</i>	容易
nature ['neɪtʃə]	<i>n.</i>	大自然
contempt [kən'tempt]	<i>n.</i>	蔑视
envious ['enviəs]	<i>a.</i>	嫉妒的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

in the light of	根据
in terms of	根据; 在某方面
envious of	嫉妒



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. It has been said that = it is said that 据说
2. In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort. 根据这种说法, 教师靠售卖知识为生, 哲学家靠售卖智慧为生, 牧师靠售卖精神安慰为生。
in the light of = according to, taking into account 根据, 考虑到
live by: to make enough money to feed oneself 依靠某种职业为生
3. There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives ...
有时, 我们为了挽救生命, 愿意付出我们所拥有的一切。
there are times when 有时
4. In seeking independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity. 在追求独立自由的同时, 他们并不牺牲个人的尊严。
5. He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive; he may even, in times of real need, do a little work; but he will never sacrifice his freedom. 为了生存, 他可能会去打

猎、乞讨，偶尔偷上一两回；确实需要的时候，他甚至可能干一点儿活，但他决不会牺牲自由。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word.

- The punishment for making false statements to the tax officers can be severe.
A) speeches B) expressions C) presentations D) talk
- If you do not come willingly, I shall have to use force.
A) quickly B) voluntarily C) fairly D) promptly
- His cruel master grudged him even the food that he ate.
A) sent B) cut short C) held on D) hated
- It is a characteristic of wisdom not to do desperate things.
A) knowledge B) science C) sense D) brightness
- I began to acquire confidence.
A) again B) get C) gain D) keep
- The First World War had far-reaching consequence in all the capitalist countries of new world.
A) effect B) source C) position D) origin
- I wish you would not afflict me with your constant complaints.
A) annoy B) surprise C) delight D) relieve
- These events aroused intense excitement throughout Europe.
A) calmed B) rose C) earned D) raised



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

live by	be aware of
in terms of	keep...from
envious of	have nothing to do with
free from	sorry for
in the light of	grudge buying

- Chiles Dickens was the first author in English literature who completely _____ writing.
- _____ what you told me I shall act in a different way?
- As for Latin American generally, there is no reason why, _____ available resources, it can't become a highly industrialized area.
- It was several minutes before I _____ what was happening.
- Mum advised me to _____ that bad person.

6. He _____ drinks for people who earns twice as much as he does.
7. They had done it out of kindness, because they were _____ the poor.
8. The newspaper refused to _____ the facts _____ the public.
9. _____ her friends' success she was always ready to humiliate (羞辱) them.
10. Keep the table _____ dirt by putting a cover on it.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 他愿意帮助他周围的人。
2. 他面临两种选择——死亡或者投降。
3. 人们普遍认为公共汽车司机应对乘客的安全负责。
4. 她丈夫平安地回来了，她总算解除了忧虑。
5. 他神经紧张，对任何响动都很警觉。

Section B



TEXT

Funny or not?



Whether we find a joke funny or not largely depends on where we have been brought up. The sense of humor is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics. A Frenchman, for instance, might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke. In the same way, a Russian might fail to see anything amusing in a joke which would make an Englishman laugh to tears.

Most funny stories are based on comic situations. In spite of national differences, certain funny situations have a universal appeal. No matter where you live, you would find it difficult not to laugh at, say, Charlie Chaplin's early films. However, a new type of humor, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion. It is called "sick humor". Comedians base their jokes on tragic situation like violent death or serious accidents. Many people find this sort of joke distasteful. The following example of "sick humor" will enable you to judge for yourself.

A man who had broken his right leg was taken to hospital a few weeks before Christmas. From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home. He dreaded having to spend Christmas in hospital. Though the doctor did his best, the patient's recovery was slow. On Christmas Day, the man still had his right leg in plaster. He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing. The following day, however, the doctor consoled him by telling him that his chances of being able to leave hospital in time for New Year

celebrations were good. The man took heart and, sure enough, on New Years' Eve he was able to hobble along to a party. To compensate for his unpleasant experiences in hospital, the man drank a little more than was good for him. In the process, he enjoyed himself thoroughly and kept telling everybody how much he hated hospitals. He was still mumbling something about hospitals at the end of the party when he slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg.



QUESTIONS

1. What is the basis of "sick humor"?
2. Why might a Frenchman find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke?
3. Why do people all over the world find Charlie Chaplin's early films amusing?
4. Where did 'sick humor' originate?



NEW WORDS

largely ['lɪ:d=li]	ad.	在很大程度上
comic ['kɒmɪk]	a.	喜剧的, 可笑的
universal [ˌjuːniˈvɜːsəl]	a.	普通的
comedian [kə'miːdiən]	n.	滑稽演员, 喜剧演员
distasteful [dis'teɪstfəl]	a.	讨厌的
pester ['pestɜː]	v.	一再要求, 纠缠
dread [dred]	v.	惧怕
recovery [ri'kʌvəri]	n.	康复
plaster ['plɪːstɜː]	n.	熟石膏
console [kən'səʊl]	v.	安慰, 慰问
hobble ['hɒbl]	v.	瘸着腿走
compensate ['kɒmpenseɪt]	v.	补偿
mumble ['mʌmbəl]	v.	喃喃而语



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. whether we find a joke funny or not 这是一个名词性从句, 在句中作主语。
2. be bound up with 与……联系在一起
3. You would find it difficult not to laugh at, say, Charlie Chaplin's early films. 你看查理·卓别林的早期电影很难不发笑。
4. However, a new type of humor, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion. 然而, 近来一种新式幽默流行了起来, 这种幽默主要来自美国。
stem from 来自, 起源于, 同义词组有 come from, arise from, originate from 等。
e.g. Her interest in flowers stemmed from her childhood in the country.
come into fashion 开始流行
5. Comedians base their jokes on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents. 喜剧演员根据悲剧情节诸如暴死、重大事故等来编造笑话。
Some funny stories are based on tragic situations.

6. From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home. 从他进医院那一刻时, 他就缠住医生, 让医生告诉他什么时候能回家。

keep doing sth. 不间断地、不停地做某事

keep on doing sth. 反复、重复干某事

7. The man drank a little more than was good for him. 那人喝得稍微多了一点。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word .

- It was such a comic state of affairs that we had to laugh.
A) interest B) funny C) economical D) regrettable
- The football is a universal game.
A) common B) extensive C) worldwide D) particular
- The very idea of cheating him is distasteful to me.
A) tasteless B) painful C) painful D) pleasant
- This boy is so shy that he dreads going out and meeting people.
A) fears B) worries C) afraid D) likes
- The patient was quite beyond the possibility of recovery.
A) return B) callback C) repair D) return to health
- He is always pestering me to help him with his homework.
A) riding B) joking C) puzzling D) annoying
- The doctor has several patients waiting to see him.
A) understanding B) forbearing C) sick individuals D) tolerant
- After fire had destroyed Thomson's house he consoled himself with the thought that it might have been worse.
A) upset B) disturbed C) comforted D) cheered
- Nothing will compensate for the loss of one's health.
A) make up B) improve C) change D) exchange
- I wish you would not mumble I can't hear you clearly.
A) talk B) speak not clearly C) speak D) shout



Phrase Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

- Health must _____ good food, fresh air and enough sleep.
A) be subject to B) depend on C) lie in D) depend on

2. The new discovery is _____ mankind health.
A) within bounds B) bound up with C) out of bounds D) be bound to
3. Thoughtless children sometimes _____ beggars and tramps.
A) laugh off B) laugh at C) laugh out of D) laugh with
4. This song is _____ an old folk tune.
A) based in B) based at C) based on D) based upon
5. _____ the heavy rain, she went to the shop.
A) Out of spite B) In spite of C) In respect that D) Regardful of
6. Nothing will ever _____ the injuries he received in the accident.
A) compensate for B) pay back C) reward with D) arrive at
7. Don't give him any cigarette, it is not _____ his health.
A) good to B) as good as C) good for D) good at
8. The present wave of strikes _____ discontent among the lower-paid.
A) dues in B) stems from C) roots on D) stems on
9. I, _____, go to the cinema with my parents.
A) some time B) sometime C) some times D) sometimes
10. Narrow skirts are _____ now, girls around world all like it.
A) after a fashion B) in the fashion C) in fashion D) out of fashion



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 作为一名护士, 你应该对病人十分耐心。
2. 他们没有上床睡觉, 反而激烈地争论起来。
3. 过了好几分钟我才明白发生了什么事。
4. 他几乎不可能完成这样困难的任务。
5. 除了一些有钱人外, 多数人骑自行车上班。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

When television first began to expand, very few of the people who had become famous as 1 announcers were able to be equally effective 2 television. Some of the difficulties they experienced when they were trying to 3 themselves to the new medium were technical. When 4 on radio, for example, they had become 5 to seeing on behalf of the listener. This art of seeing for others 6 that the announcer has to be very good 7 talking. Above all, he has to be able to 8 a continuous sequence (序列) of visual (视觉的) images which add meaning 9 the round the listener hears. In the 10 of television, however, the announcer sees 11 with the viewer. His duty, 12, is completely different. He is there to make 13 that the viewer does not 14 any point of interest, to help him focus 15 particular things, and to help him 16 the images on the television screen. 17

his radio colleague, he must know the 18 of silence and how to use it at those 19 when the pictures speak for 20.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A) television | B) advertisement | C) radio | D) newspaper |
| 2. A) of | B) in | C) at | D) on |
| 3. A) adopt | B) adjust | C) alter | D) adapt |
| 4. A) working | B) listening | C) appearing | D) showing |
| 5. A) practised | B) experienced | C) determined | D) used |
| 6. A) guarantees | B) means | C) convinces | D) warns |
| 7. A) at | B) with | C) in | D) of |
| 8. A) reflect | B) create | C) cause | D) affect |
| 9. A) to | B) in | C) on | D) about |
| 10. A) occasion | B) matter | C) example | D) case |
| 11. A) something | B) everything | C) nothing | D) anything |
| 12. A) moreover | B) therefore | C) furthermore | D) nevertheless |
| 13. A) clear | B) definite | C) sure | D) easy |
| 14. A) miss | B) ignore | C) drop | D) catch |
| 15. A) to | B) at | C) in | D) on |
| 16. A) reveal | B) expose | C) understand | D) translate |
| 17. A) Unlike | B) Besides | C) Like | D) As |
| 18. A) price | B) cost | C) value | D) worth |
| 19. A) minutes | B) periods | C) times | D) moments |
| 20. A) them | B) him | C) themselves | D) himself |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

While still in its early stages, welfare reform has already been judged a great success in many states—at least in getting people off welfare. It's estimated that more than 2 million people have left the rolls since 1994.

In the past four years, welfare rolls in Athens County have been cut in half. But 70 percent of the people who left in the past two years took jobs that paid less than \$6 an hour. The result: The Athens County poverty rate still remains at more than 30 percent—twice the national average.

For advocates (代言人) for the poor, that's an indication much more needs to be done.

"More people are getting jobs, but it's not making their lives any better," says Kathy Lairn, a policy analyst at the Center on Budget and Policy Priorities in Washington.

A center analysis of US Census data nationwide found that a greater percentage of single, female-headed households were earning money on their own, but that average income for these households actually went down.

But for many, the fact that poor people are able to support themselves almost as well without government aid as they did with it is in itself a huge victory.

"Welfare was a poison. It was a toxin (毒素) that was poisoning the family," says Robert

Rector, a welfare-reform policy analyst. “The reform in changing the moral climate in low-income communities. It’s beginning to rebuild the work ethic (道德观), which is much more important.”

Mr. Rector and others argued that once “the habit of dependency is cracked,” then the country can make other policy changes aimed at improving living standards.

1. From the passage, it can be seen that the author _____.
 - A) believes the reform has reduced the government’s burden
 - B) insists that welfare reform is doing little good for the poor
 - C) is overenthusiastic about the success of welfare reform
 - D) considers welfare reform to be fundamentally successful
2. Why aren’t people enjoying better lives when they have jobs?
 - A) Because many families are divorced.
 - B) Because government aid is now rare.
 - C) Because their wages are low.
 - D) Because the cost of living is rising.
3. What is worth noting from the example of Athens County is that _____.
 - A) greater efforts should be made to improve people’s living standards
 - B) 70 percent of the people there have been employed for two years
 - C) 50 percent of the population no longer relies on welfare
 - D) the living standards of most people are going down
4. From the passage we know that welfare reform aims at _____.
 - A) saving welfare funds
 - B) rebuilding the work ethic
 - C) providing more jobs
 - D) cutting government expenses
5. According to the passage before the welfare reform was carried out, _____.
 - A) the poverty rate was lower
 - B) average living standards were higher
 - C) the average worker was paid higher wages
 - D) the poor used to rely on government aid

Section C



被动语态

一、概念

1. 语态

语态是动词的一种形式，它表示主语和谓语的关系。

语态有两种：主动语态和被动语态。

如果动作是由主语完成的，要用主动语态；如果主语是动作，不是由主语而是由其他人完成的，则用被动语态。

2. 主动句变为被动句所遵循的 4 个步骤

1) 把原主动句中的宾语提到句首，变为被动句的主语；

2) 把动词变为被动形式，即“be + 过去分词”，并注意其人称和数随主语的变化而变化，而动词的时态则保持不变；

3) 原主动句的主语，如需要则放在 by 后面以它的宾格形式出现（代词的宾格），如不需要则可省略；

4) 其他的成分（定语、状语）不变。例如

主动语态：Bruce writes a letter every week.

被动语态：Letter is written by Bruce every week.

主动语态：Li Lei mended the broken bike this morning.

被动语态：The broken bike was mended by Li Lei this morning.

3. 被动语态各时态构成表

时态	主动语态	被动语态
一般现在时	do/ does	am/ is/ are done
一般将来时	will do	will be done
现在进行时	am/ is/ are doing	am/ is/ are being done
一般过去时	was/ were/ did	was/ were done
一般完成时	have/ has done	have/ has been done
过去完成时	had done	had+ been done
过去进行时	was/ were doing	was/ were being done
情态动词	can do	can be done

二、用法

1. 一般现在时的被动语态构成：is / am / are + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态：We clean our classroom everyday.

被动语态：Our classroom is cleaned everyday.

2) 主动语态：My mother asks me to study hard.

被动语态：I am asked to study hard by my mother.

3) 主动语态：We use knives for cutting things.

被动语态：Knives are used for cutting things.

2. 一般过去时的被动语态构成：was / were + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态：We built a new shop last year.

被动语态：A new shop was built last year.

2) 主动语态：Dinosaur laid dinosaur eggs long long ago.

被动语态: Dinosaur eggs were laid long long ago.

3. 现在完成时的被动语态构成: has / have + been + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态: The translators has translated this book into many languages.

被动语态: This book has been translated into many languages.

2) 主动语态: Many countries have sent up many man-made satellites into space .

被动语态: Many man-made satellites have been sent up into space by many countries.

4. 一般将来时的被动语态构成: will+ be + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态: We will build a new hospital in our city.

被动语态: A new hospital will be built in our city.

2) 主动语态: We will plant many more trees next year.

被动语态: Many more trees will be planted next year.

5. 含有情态动词的被动语态构成: 情态动词+ be + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态: We must water young trees often.

被动语态: Young trees must be watered often.

2) 主动语态: You should correct your mistakes right now.

被动语态: Your mistakes should be corrected right now.

3) 主动语态: We may lock the door inside.

被动语态: The door may be locked inside.

4) 主动语态: You can hand in your homework tomorrow.

被动语态: Your homework can be handed in tomorrow.

6. 现在进行时的被动语态构成: am / is / are + being + 及物动词的过去分词

1) 主动语态: Uncle Wang is mending my bike now.

被动语态: My bike is being mended by uncle Wang now.

2) 主动语态: Tom is repairing my bike now.

被动语态: My bike is being repaired by Tom now.

3) 主动语态: They are planting trees over there.

被动语态: Trees are being planted over there by them.

7. 不定式的被动语态: to + be + 及物动词的过去分词

There are two books to be read.

There are twenty more trees to be planted.

三、使用被动语态应注意的几个问题

1. 不及物动词无被动语态, 例如

What will happen in 100 years?

The dinosaurs disappeared about 65 million years ago.

2. 有些动词用主动形式表示被动意义, 例如

This pen writes well.

This new book sells well.

3. 感官动词或使役动词使用省略 to 的动词不定式, 主动语态中不带 to, 但变为被动语态时, 须加上 to。例如

make somebody do something → somebody + be + made to do something

see somebody do something → somebody + be + seen to do something

主动语态: A girl saw my wallet drop when she passed by.

被动语态: My wallet was seen to drop by a girl when she passed by.

主动语态: The boss made the little boy do heavy work.

被动语态: The little boy was made to do heavy work by the boss.

4. 如果接双宾语的动词改为被动语态时, 直接宾语(物)作主语, 那么动词后要用介词, 这个介词是由与其搭配的动词决定的。

主动语态: He gave me a book.

被动语态: A book was given to me by him.

主动语态: He showed me a ticket.

被动语态: A ticket was shown to me by him.

主动语态: My father bought me a new bike.

被动语态: A new bike was bought for me by my father.

5. 一些动词短语用于被动语态时, 动词短语应当看做一个整体, 而不能丢掉其中的介词或副词。

主动语态: We can't laugh at him.

被动语态: He can't be laugh at by us.

主动语态: He listens to the radio every day.

被动语态: The radio is listened to by him every day.

主动语态: The nurse is taking care of the sick man.

被动语态: The sick man is being taken care of by the nurse.



Grammar Exercise

Put the following active voice into passive voice.

1. His mother told him not to waste time on fishing.
2. Father gave me a toy at Christmas.
3. This factory produces machine tools.
4. They should do it at once.
5. He is likely to let you down.
6. They named the child Tom.
7. You must finish the article before Friday.
8. They will not paint the house again next year.
9. They promised Mary a new doll for her birthday.
10. I have told the children many times not to skate on the pond.

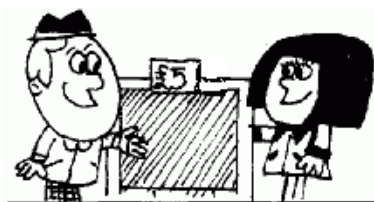
11. He translated the story into English.
12. We had to repair our TV set.
13. Do they take good care of the sick?
14. Their company has paid the workers very high wages.
15. They showed me the room where they lived.
16. They are teaching how to operate the new machine.

Unit Two SHOPPING

Section A



TEXT



Five Pounds too Dear

Small boats loaded with wares sped to the great liner as she was entering the harbour. Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silks from India, copper coffee pots, and beautiful handmade silverware. It was difficult not to be tempted. Many of the tourists on board had begun bargaining with the tradesmen, but I decided not to buy anything until I had disembarked.

I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring. I had no intention of buying one, but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds. Some of them were as big as marbles. The man went to great lengths to prove that the diamonds were real. As we were walking past a shop, he held a diamond firmly against the window and made a deep impression in the glass. It took me over half an hour to get rid of him.

The next man to approach me was selling expensive pens and watches. I examined one of the pens closely. It certainly looked genuine. At the base of the gold cap, the words 'made in the U.S.A' had been nearly inscribed. The man said that the pen was worth £50, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for £30. I shook my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £5. Gesticulating wildly, the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous, but he eventually reduced the price to £10. Shrugging my shoulders, I began to walk away when, a moment later, he ran after me and thrust the pen into my hands. Though he kept throwing up his arms in despair, he readily accepted the £5 I gave him. I felt especially pleased with my wonderful bargain until I got back to the ship. No matter how hard I tried, it was impossible to fill this beautiful pen with ink and to this day it has never written a single word!



QUESTIONS

1. Why was even five pounds "too dear"?
2. What happened as the great liner was entering the harbour?

3. Why was the writer impressed by the size of the diamonds?
4. What did the diamond seller do to prove that his diamonds were real?



NEW WORDS

wares [w43z]	n.	货物, 商品
anchor [ə59k3]	v.	停航下锚
deck [dek]	n.	甲板
pot [p6t]	n.	陶罐; 锅
silverware [əsɪlv3we3]	n.	银器
tempt [tempt]	v.	吸引; 引诱
bargain [əb1:ɪn]	v.	讨价还价
disembark [ˌdɪsɪməb1:k]	v.	下船上岸
assail [3əseɪl]	v.	纠缠
marble [əm1:bl]	n.	小玻璃球
inscribe [ɪnəskraɪb]	v.	刻写, 雕
favour ['feɪv3]	n.	好处, 优惠
gesticulate [d=es'tɪkjuleɪt]	v.	(讲话时) 打手势
outrageous [aut'reɪd=3s]	a.	出人预料的; 残暴的
thrust [0r2st]	v.	硬塞给; 推



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

bargain with	讨价
no sooner...than...	一……就……
go to great lengths	尽力
in despair	绝望



PROPER NAME

Persia	波斯 (西南亚国家, 现在的伊朗)
--------	-------------------



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed... 我刚刚一下船就被纠缠住了。
no sooner...than... 一……就……, 含义与用法同 hardly...when
I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain. 我一到家, 就下起雨来。
2. go to great lengths to do sth 竭力做某事
This champion marathon runner is going to great lengths to help needy children. 这个马拉松冠军尽己所能去帮助贫困儿童。
3. get rid of 摆脱
We would not want to get rid of friction entirely even if we could get rid of it. 即使我们能摆脱摩擦, 我们也不想完全摆脱它。
4. as a special favour 作为一种特殊的优惠

The man said that the pen was worth 50 pounds, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for 30 pounds. 那人说那支笔值 50 英镑, 作为特别优惠, 他愿意让我出 30 英镑买下。

5. throw up his arms in despair 绝望地举起双手

throw up 抛起; 举起

She threw up her arms in horror. 她惊恐地向上举起手臂。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word.

- As soon as the young man returned home, his parents assailed him with questions about the examination.
A) pounded B) tested C) attacked D) queried
- The baker traveled round the town selling his wares.
A) glasses B) manual C) cases D) vessel.
- When the musician finished his performance, the audiences applauded (拍手喝彩) with genuine enthusiasm.
A) fictional B) heart-whole C) reliable D) factual (事实的)
- Jew was subjected to outrageous cruelty in Nazi concentration camp (纳粹党集中营).
A) cruel B) intolerable C) shocking D) bearable
- The thrust was successful and reached the enemy's headquarters.
A) knock B) attack C) rush D) beat
- We refused the offer even though it tempted us.
A) worried B) tested C) drew in D) explored
- As a special favor, I will let you stay up late tonight.
A) expect B) respect C) blessing D) kindness
- I ask him for a job under the impression that he was the head of the firm, but he wasn't.
A) feeling B) memory C) printing D) trail
- The story of Adam and Eve was inscribed on the door of the Cathedral (大教堂).
A) listed B) remembered C) engraved D) written
- Something was disagreed with him, George suddenly began to throw up all over the place.
A) make up B) give up C) sick up D) bring up



Phrase Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

- The city council (理事会) _____ the party _____ taxes.

- A) loaded, in B) loaded, on C) loaded, with D) loaded, up
2. She _____ the trader till he sold her the fruit cheaply.
A) bargained away B) bargained on C) bargained for D) bargained with
3. The absent-minded girl forgot to _____ at Cheng Xiang street and was taken on to Yuhua street.
A) get in B) get out of C) get down D) get off
4. Sun had _____ started to shine, _____ it was clouded over again.
A) no sooner, than B) sooner, than
C) the sooner, the better D) would sooner, than
5. This large company has _____ some small ones.
A) handed over B) taken over C) eaten up D) used up
6. His son was _____ as a model of hard work.
A) held up B) raised up C) hold to D) kept up
7. Instead of devoting himself to his studies, he wastes his time _____ girls.
A) run after B) to run after C) running for D) running after
8. The smell of the drain is enough to make one _____.
A) throw over B) throw up C) bring up D) put up
9. Our hostess _____ make sure we are comfortable.
A) went to the length of B) went great length to C) launch on D) cast about for
10. "You are supposed to _____ carelessness, for it often leads to errors."
A) die out B) die away C) get rid of D) get rid off



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 嘉利妹妹被城里众多的人群和繁忙的交通弄得晕头转向。
2. 理论依赖实践反过来又为实践服务。
3. 那个人继而又谈起了世界形势。
4. 我受不了办公室里没完没了的嘈杂声。
5. 如果你们在同一个办公室工作，总免不了见面。

Section B



TEXT

A Lovable Eccentric



True eccentrics never deliberately set out to draw attention to themselves. They disregard social conventions without being conscious that they are doing anything extraordinary. This

invariably wins them the love and respect of others, for they add colour to the dull routine of everyday life.

Up to the time of his death, Richard Colson was one of the most notable figures in our town. He was a shrewd and wealthy businessman, but most people in the town hardly knew anything about this side of his life. He was known to us all as Dickie and his eccentricity had become legendary long before he died.

Dickie disliked snobs intensely. Though he owned a large car, he hardly ever used it, preferring always to go on foot. Even when it was raining heavily, he refused to carry an umbrella. One day, he walked into an expensive shop after having been caught in a particularly heavy shower. He wanted to buy a £300 watch for his wife, but he was in such a bedraggled condition that an assistant refused to serve him. Dickie left the shop without a word and returned carrying a large cloth bag. As it was extremely heavy, he dumped it on the counter. The assistant asked him to leave, but Dickie paid no attention to him and requested to see the manager. Recognizing who the customer was, the manager was most apologetic and reprimanded the assistant severely. When Dickie was given the watch, he presented the assistant with the cloth bag. It contained £300 in pennies. He insisted on the assistant's counting the money before he left—30,000 pennies in all! On another occasion, he invited a number of important critics to see his private collection of modern paintings. This exhibition received a great deal of attention in the press, for though the pictures were supposed to be the work of famous artists, they had in fact been painted by Dickie. It took him four years to stage this elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.



QUESTIONS

1. Why did the shop assistant refuse to serve Dickie?
2. Why did eccentrics add colour to the dull routine of everyday life?
3. Why was Richard Colson one of the most notable figures of our town?
4. What did Colson set out to prove when he held an exhibition of modern painting?



NEW WORDS

lovable ['lʌvəbl]	a.	可爱的
eccentric [ɪkəsentrɪk]	n.	(行为) 古怪人
disregard [ˌdɪsɪˈɡɑːd]	v.	不顾, 漠视
convention [kən'venʃən]	n.	习俗, 风俗
conscious ['kɒnʃəs]	a.	感觉到的, 意识到的
invariably [ɪnə'veəriəbli]	ad.	总是, 经常地
routine [ruː'tiːn]	n.	常规; 惯例
shrewd [ʃruːd]	a.	精明的
eccentricity [ˌɛksən'trɪsɪti]	n.	怪僻

legendary ['led=3nd3ri]	a.	传奇般的
snob [sn6b]	n.	势利小人, 谄上欺下的人
intensely [in'tensli]	ad.	强烈地
bedraggled [biɔdræg3ld]	a.	拖泥带水的
dump [d2mp]	v.	把……砰的一声抛下; 倾倒
apologetic [3;p6l3ɔd=etik]	a.	道歉的
reprimand [ɔreprima:nd]	v.	训斥
stage [steid=]	v.	暗中策划
elaborate [iɔləb3r3t]	a.	精心构思的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

draw attention to	吸引
without being conscious	没意识到
insist on	坚持
be supposed to do	应该



PROPER NAME

Richard Colson	理查德·科尔森
Dickie	迪基



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. set out to do sth. 打算, 企图做某事

They succeeded in what they set out to do. 他们打算做的事已经做成了。

2. draw attention to 对……引起注意

We want to try to draw attention to what's valuable in their relationship. 我们试图要人们注意他们关系中有价值的一些方面。

3. without being conscious that... 没有意识到……

They disregard social conventions without being conscious that they are doing anything extraordinary. 他们不顾社会习俗, 并未意识到自己在做些与众不同的事。

4. This invariably wins them the love and respect of others. 这常常使他们赢得人们的爱戴和尊敬。

win sb. sth. 使某人获得物

5. add...to 把……添加到……

Add love to a house and you have a home; add righteousness to a city and you have a community; add truth to a pile of red brick and you have a school; add freedom to the human endeavor and you have civilization. 把爱赋予一座房子, 你就拥有一个家; 把正义赋予一座城市, 你就拥有一个社会; 把真理赋予一堆红砖, 你就拥有一所学校; 把自由赋予人类的努力, 你就拥有了文明。

6. this side of his life 他生活中这方面的情况。这里指的是 He was a shrewd and wealthy businessman.
7. be caught in 突然遇上, 碰上
I wish you had not been caught in the rain yesterday. 但愿昨天你们没有淋到雨。
8. Recognizing who the customer was, the manager was most apologetic... 经理认出这个顾客是谁了, 便竭力赔礼道歉……
这句话用现在分词短语作原因状语, most 在这里起加强语气的作用, 相当于 very。
9. insisted on the assistant's counting... 坚持让店员点清……
insist on 后接动名词
e.g. If you marry I must insist on your giving up your work. 如果你结了婚, 我坚持要你辞去你的工作。
the assistant's 是动名词 counting 的逻辑主语。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word .

- He bumped in me deliberately.
A) intentionally B) unintentionally C) by chance D) by purpose
- Advertisement is necessary in our daily life.
A) every day B) everyday C) ordinary D) average
- The teacher reprimanded him for cheating in the exam.
A) blamed B) punished C) praised D) condemned.
- He is a shrewd businessman.
A) good B) clever C) bad D) dull
- He is a man with extraordinary talents.
A) special B) particular C) uncommon D) common
- Cleaning the office is his routine duty.
A) regular B) usual C) only D) occasional
- Sending out a liferope without any protection is a foolhardy venture.
A) shrewd B) bravery C) rash D) amazing
- Unfriendly foreigners may be sent out.
A) kept out B) drove out C) put into prison D) tried in court
- Rather than vote for either side, they decided to give up.
A) not vote B) vote for both C) stay home D) vote later
- Everyone is surprised at his eccentric behavior.
A) extreme B) strange C) normal D) customary



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

hardly ever	a number of
up to now	draw one's attention
add...to	be caught in
on many occasions	be supposed to
insist on	set out

1. _____, he has been studying French for five years.
2. You _____ come to school on time.
3. He _____ to make his first million in five years.
4. The defendant (被告) _____ his innocence (清白).
5. She has _____ gone out by herself at night.
6. He brought us laughs _____.
7. _____ discoveries have been made by this group.
8. These activities _____ color _____ our college life.
9. The light in the distance _____ and I went in its direction.
10. He _____ an embarrassing situation.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 比尔·盖茨是一个传奇人物，他年纪轻轻就拥有大笔财富。
2. 有些艺人漠视社会习俗。
3. 因为这个箱子很沉，他把它重重地扔在了床上。
4. 他坚持要自己完成这项任务。
5. 他往茶里加了点水，因为茶太浓。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

The term e-commerce refers to all commercial transactions(交易)conducted over the Internet, including transactions by consumers and business-to-business transactions. Conceptually, e-commerce does not 1 from well-known commercial offerings such as banking by phone, "mail order" catalogs(目录), or sending a purchase order to supplier 2 fax. E-commerce follows the same model 3 in other business transactions; the difference 4 in the details.

To a consumer, the most visible form of e-commerce consists 5 online ordering. A customer begins with a catalog of possible items, 6 an item, arranges a form of payment, and 7 an order. Instead of a physical catalog, e-commerce arranges for catalogs to be 8 on the Internet. Instead of sending an order on paper or by telephone, e-commerce arranges for orders to be

sent 9 a computer network. Finally, instead of sending a paper representation of payment such as a check, e-commerce 10 one to send payment information electronically.

In the decade 11 1993, e-commerce grew from an 12 novelty (新奇事物) to a mainstream business influence. In 1993, few 13 had a web page, and 14 a handful allowed one to order products or services online. Ten years 15, both large and small businesses had web pages, and most 16 users with the opportunity to place an order. 17, many banks added online access, 18 online banking and bill paying became 19. More importantly, the value of goods and services 20 over the Internet grew dramatically after 1997.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A) distract | B) descend | C) differ | D) derive |
| 2. A) with | B) via | C) from | D) off |
| 3. A) appeared | B) used | C) resorted | D) served |
| 4. A) situates | B) lies | C) roots | D) locates |
| 5. A) on | B) of | C) for | D) to |
| 6. A) reflects | B) detects | C) protects | D) selects |
| 7. A) sends in | B) puts out | C) stands for | D) carries away |
| 8. A) visible | B) responsible | C) feasible | D) sensible |
| 9. A) beside | B) over | C) beyond | D) up |
| 10. A) appeals | B) admits | C) advocates | D) allows |
| 11. A) after | B) behind | C) until | D) toward |
| 12. A) optional | B) invalid | C) occasional | D) insignificant |
| 13. A) communities | B) corps | C) corporations | D) compounds |
| 14. A) largely | B) slightly | C) solely | D) only |
| 15. A) lately | B) later | C) late | D) latter |
| 16. A) offered | B) convinced | C) equipped | D) provided |
| 17. A) Instead | B) Nevertheless | C) However | D) Besides |
| 18. A) and | B) or | C) but | D) though |
| 19. A) different | B) flexible | C) widespread | D) productive |
| 20. A) acquired | B) adapted | C) practiced | D) proceeded |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

High-quality customer service is preached (宣扬) by many, but actually keeping customers happy is easier said than done.

Shoppers seldom complain to the manager or owner of a retail store, but instead will alert their friends, relatives, co-workers, strangers and anyone who will listen.

Store managers are often the last to hear complaints, and often find out only when their regular customers decide frequent to their competitors, according to a study jointly conducted by Verde group and Wharton school.

“Storytelling hurts retailers and entertains consumers,” said Paula Courtney, President of the Verde group. “The store loses the customer, but the shopper must also find a replacement.”

On average, every unhappy customer will complain to at least four others, and will no longer

visit the specific store for every dissatisfied customer, a store will lose up to three more due to negative reviews. The resulting “snowball effect” can be terrible to retailers.

According to the research, shoppers who purchased clothing encountered the most problems. Ranked second and third were grocery (杂货商) and electronics customers.

The most common complaints include filled parking lots, shelves, overloaded racks, out-of-stock items, long check-out lines, and rude salespeople.

During peak shopping hours, some retailers solved the parking problems by getting moonlighting local police to work as parking attendants. Some hired flag wavers to direct customers to empty parking spaces. This guidance eliminated the need for customers to circle the parking lot endlessly, and avoided confrontation between those eyeing the same parking space.

Retailers can relieve the headaches by redesigning store layouts, pre-stocking sales items, hiring speedy and experienced cashiers, and having sales representatives on hand to answer questions.

Most importantly, salespeople should be diplomatic and polite with angry customers.

“Retailers who’re responsive and friendly are more likely to smooth over issues than those who aren’t so friendly.” said Professor Stephen Hoch. “Maybe something as simple as a greeter at the store entrance would help.”

Customers can also improve future shopping experiences by filing complaints to the retailer, instead of complaining to the rest of the world. Retailers are hard-pressed to improve when they have no idea what is wrong.

1. Why are store managers often the last to hear complaints?
 - A) Most customers won’t bother to complain even if they have had unhappy experiences.
 - B) Customers would rather relate their unhappy experiences to people around them.
 - C) Few customers believe the service will be improved.
 - D) Customers have no easy access to store managers.
2. What does Paula Courtney imply by saying “... the shopper must also find a replacement” (Line 2, Para. 4)?
 - A) New customers are bound to replace old ones.
 - B) It is not likely the shopper can find the same products in other stores.
 - C) Most stores provide the same.
 - D) Not complaining to the manager causes the shopper some trouble too.
3. Shop owners often hire moonlighting police as parking attendants so that shoppers____
 - A) can stay longer browsing in the store
 - B) won’t have trouble parking their cars
 - C) won’t have any worries about security
 - D) can find their cars easily after shopping
4. What contributes most to smoothing over issues with customers?
 - A) Manners of the salespeople
 - B) Hiring of efficient employees

- C) Huge supply of goods for sale
 - D) Design of the store layout.
5. To achieve better shopping experiences, customers are advised to _____.
- A) exert pressure on stores to improve their service
 - B) settle their disputes with stores in a diplomatic way
 - C) voice their dissatisfaction to store managers directly
 - D) shop around and make comparisons between stores

Section C



直接引语和间接引语

一、概念

1. 直接引语

直接引语是直接引用别人的话，如

Tom said, “I am a student.”

2. 间接引语

间接引语是间接转述别人的话，如

Tom said that he was a student.

二、如何将直接引语变成间接引语

1. 人称的变化

间接引语中人称代词的变化，要根据句子的意义做相应的变动。其规律是“一主二宾三不变”，即第一人称代词指的是句子的主语，第二人称代词指的是句子的宾语，第三人称代词不用变化。

He said: “My mother is a teacher.”

He said his mother was a teacher.

2. 时态的变化

直接引语变成间接引语时，间接引语的时态要与主句的时态一致，其规律如下表所示：

直接引语	间接引语
一般现在时	一般过去时
现在完成时	过去完成时
现在进行时	过去进行时
一般过去时	过去完成时
过去完成时	不变
一般将来时	过去将来时
将来进行时	过去将来进行时
将来完成时	过去将来完成时
过去进行时	过去完成进行时

3. 指示代词、时间状语和动词的变化

通常总是由近指改为远指，其规律如下表所示：

	直接引语	间接引语
指示代词	this these	that those
地点状语	here	there
动词	come	go
时间状语	now today tonight this week yesterday last week three days ago tomorrow next week	then that day that night that week the day before the last week three days before the following/ next day the next week

4. 句式的变化

1) 陈述句的变化

直接引语是陈述句时，间接引语为 that 引导的宾语从句，主句的引述动词主要有 say、tell 等。

He said, “You are younger than I.”

He said (that) I was younger than him.

2) 一般疑问句的变化

若直接引语为一般疑问句，则改为间接引语时要用 if/ whether 引导的宾语从句，谓语动词用 ask 引导。

“Do you like rice or noodles?” Marry asked me.

Marry asked me whether I liked rice or noodles.

She said, “Do you often come here to read newspapers?”

She asked me if (或 whether) I often went there to read newspapers.

3) 特殊疑问句的变化

若直接引语为特殊疑问句，间接引语就要变为相应的疑问词引导的宾语从句，谓语动词用 ask 引导。

He asked me , “When will you go to the city?”

He asked me when I would go to the city.

He asked us, “What are you doing now?”

He asked us what we were doing then.

4) 祈使句的变化

祈使句变间接引语，间接引语为不定式，作 beg、tell、ask、advise、order、warn 等动词的宾语补足语 (don’t 变为 not)，要 “一改二变三加四去”。

一改：said (to)改为 told, asked 或 ordered。

二变：said (to)的宾语改为 told、asked 或 ordered 的宾语。

三加：在动词原形前加 to，构成动词不定式。

四去：去掉 please。

The teacher said to the boy, "Open the window."

The teacher told the boy to open the window.

His father said to him, "Don't leave the door open."

His father told him not to leave the door open.

三、直接引语变间接引语应该注意的问题

1. 如果直接引语的谓语动词是一般过去时，而且引用的句子是客观真理，在变成间接引语的时候，时态不变。

The old man said to his grandson, "The earth rises in the east."

The old man told his grandson that the earth rises in the east.

2. 在直接引语变成间接引语时，如果引语的内容是含有一般过去时的时间状语，在变成间接引语时，仍然用一般过去时。

The actor said to us, "I was born in 1958."

The actor told us that he was born in 1958.

3. 应注意时间状语的变化。

He said, "I criticized him yesterday."

He said that he criticized him yesterday.

间接引语的主句和直接引语的主句的动作在同一天发生，仍用 yesterday。间接引语的主句的动作发生在直接引语的主句的动作之后，yesterday 该为 the day before，同时改为过去完成时。



Grammar Exercise

Put the following direct speech into indirect speech.

1. Our teacher said to us, "The moon moves round the earth."
2. The boy said, "I like football very much."
3. The student said, "He is feeling a little under the weather."
4. The doctor said, "The patient needs an X-ray."
5. Mr. Smith said, "I caught the bus."
6. The woman said, "I have finished the work."
7. The little boy said, "I can skate now."
8. Anna said, "I will be watching TV at seven o'clock tonight."
9. The teacher said, "The classroom must be cleaned."
10. She said, "The film had started when I got to the cinema."
11. He asked me, "Have you seen him before?"
12. They asked us, "What have you told him?"
13. The girl asked us, "What do you usually do in the evening?"
14. The man said to me, "Cook dinner for me."
15. The teacher said to the student, "Don't be late for school next time."
16. The commander ordered, "Stand up!"

Unit Three SPORT

Section A



TEXT



The Cutty Sark

One of the most famous sailing ships of the nineteenth century, the Cutty Sark, can still be seen at Greenwich. She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year. She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past. Before they were replaced by steamships, sailing vessels like the Cutty Sark were used to carry tea from China and wool from Australia. The Cutty Sark was one the fastest sailing ships that has ever been built. The only other ship to match her was the Thermopylae. Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England. This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind. It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the Thermopylae, but on the Indian Ocean, the Cutty Sark took the lead. It seemed certain that she would be the first ship home, but during the race she had a lot of bad luck. In August, she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away. The Cutty Sark rolled from side to side and it became impossible to steer her. A temporary rudder was made on board from spare planks and it was fitted with great difficulty. This greatly reduced the speed of the ship, for there was a danger that if she travelled too quickly, this rudder would be torn away as well. Because of this, the Cutty Sark lost her lead. After crossing the Equator, the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted, but by now the Thermopylae was over five hundred miles ahead. Though the new rudder was fitted at tremendous speed, it was impossible for the Cutty Sark to win. She arrived in England a week after the Thermopylae. Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.



QUESTIONS

1. What piece of bad luck prevented the Cutty Sark from winning the race?
2. Where can the Cutty Sark be seen?

3. what sort of cargo did ships like the Cutty Sark carry?
4. How long did the race between the Cutty Sark and the Thermopylae last?



NEW WORDS

impressive [im'presiv]	a.	给人深刻印象的
steamship ['sti:m7ip]	n.	蒸汽轮船
vessel ['vesl]	n.	轮船, 大木船
era [əi3r3]	n.	时期, 时代
rudder ['r2d3]	n.	舵
roll [r3ul]	v.	颠簸, 摇摆
steer [sti3]	v.	掌握方向
temporary ['temp3reri]	a.	临时的
plank [pl59k]	n.	大块木板
fit [fit]	v.	安装
Equator [iəkwet3]	n.	赤道
delay [di'lei]	n.	耽误



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

take the lead	领先
with great difficulty	困难



PROPER NAME

Cutty Sark	船名 卡迪萨克
Greenwich	地名 格林尼治
Thermopylae	船名 塞莫皮莱
Java [ə'd=1:v3]	爪哇 (印度尼西亚一岛)



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. Cutty Sark “卡迪萨克”号, 19 世纪一艘著名的帆船。现在这艘船在伦敦格林尼治作为展品被保护了起来。在轮船时代以前, 它是那时候最快的帆船。
2. both these ships 这两艘船, 也可写成 both of these ships 或 both ships。
3. The first of the two ships to reach Java... 两艘船中首先到达爪哇的……
不定式短语 to reach Java 此处作定语, 修饰 first, 中间被另一个修饰 first 的介词短语 of the two ships 分开。
4. take the lead 领先, 带头; lose one's lead 失去其领先地位
They invariably take the lead in battles against floods. 在抗洪斗争中, 他们总是带头的。
5. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.
毫无疑问, 如果中途没有失去舵, “卡迪萨克”号肯定能在比赛中轻易夺冠。这是一个虚拟语气的句子, 是对过去的一种假设。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word .

- At last, the judge pronounced his opinion with a low and impressive air.
A) touching B) splendid C) luxurious D) noble
- The Queen Elizabeth II is a large beautiful vessel.
A) container B) canal C) ship D) boat.
- That bridge fell down and a temporary one was put into its place.
A) lasting B) temperature C) occasional D) forever
- Gone with the wind* is a remarkable movie.
A) peculiar B) strange C) ordinary D) noticeable
- All these minimum measures must be carried out without delay.
A) block B) stay C) slow D) stop
- In the past sentence, the judge took consideration into that it was the prisoner's first mistake.
A) pay B) regard C) believe D) design
- A racing car is one specially made for racing.
A) ruining B) moving C) reaching D) running
- All of us, nobody excepted, agree to the decision.
A) yet B) besides C) unless D) however
- Can anything replace a mother's love and care?
A) recover B) regain C) take the place of D) withdraw
- Danny was a clever and resourceful young man.
A) abundant B) humorous C) original D) witty



Phrase Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

- The answer disappoints you or doesn't appear to _____ you.
A) fit into B) fit in with C) fit on D) fit up
- These engines _____ by hand, now they are started by electricity.
A) got used to starting B) were used to starting
C) used to be started D) used to start
- His unpunctuality _____ an excuse to get rid of him.
A) served on B) served as C) serve up D) serve out
- Can anything _____ her love?
A) recover B) regain C) take the place of D) withdraw

5. What's a beautiful story, it _____ me _____ an experience I once had in Japan.
 A) reminds, into B) reminds, with
 C) reminds, to D) reminds, of
6. _____ the essential (基本的) facts of this very singular story.
 A) So much for B) As much as C) So much so that D) So much to
7. Slave dealers _____ children _____ from their parents.
 A) tear, down B) tore, across C) tear, at D) tore, away
8. Do you think it easier to learn maths than physics?
 No. In fact I feel maths _____ physics?
 A) as a difficult subject as B) so difficult a subject as
 C) so a difficult subject as D) as difficult a subject as
9. Why was the road crowded? The traffic was _____ by a car accident.
 A) held up B) held back C) held to D) held out
10. His careless speech _____ much argument. He regretted _____ that at the meeting.
 A) resulted in; saying B) caused to; to have said
 C) resulted from; having said D) led to; to say



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

- 大学生参加社会实践是非常重要的。
- 原始人认为，吃鹿就可以使他们跑得像鹿一样快。
- 这小孩把玩具拆开了，却不知道如何再组装起来。
- 这两兄弟外貌十分相似，但性格却差别很大。
- 她感到难以适应国外的生活。

Section B



TEXT

The Sporting Spirit



I am always amazed when I hear people saying that sport creates goodwill between the nations, and that if only the common peoples of the world could meet one another at football or cricket, they would have no inclination to meet on the battlefield. Even if one didn't know from concrete examples (the 1936 Olympic Games, for instance) that international sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred, one could deduce it from general principles.

Nearly all the sports practised nowadays are competitive. You play to win, and the game has

little meaning unless you do your utmost to win. On the village green, where you pick up sides and no feeling of local patriotism is involved, it is possible to play simply for the fun and exercise: but as soon as the question of prestige arises, as soon as you feel that you and some larger unit will be disgraced if you lose, the most savage combative instincts are aroused. Anyone who has played even in a school football match knows this. At the international level, sport is frankly mimic warfare. But the significant thing is not the behaviour of the players but the attitude of the spectators; and, behind the spectators, of the nations who work themselves into furies over these absurd contests, and seriously believe—at any rate for short periods—that running, jumping and kicking a ball are tests of national virtue.



QUESTIONS

1. How does the writer describe sport at the international level?
2. Why, according to the author, do international sporting contests lead to orgies of hatred?
3. What, according to the author, do spectators believe when they watch international sporting contests?



NEW WORDS

goodwill [ːgudəwɪl]	<i>n.</i>	友好
cricket [ˈkɹɪkɪt]	<i>n.</i>	板球
inclination [ˌɪnklɪˈneɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	意愿
contest [ˈkɒntest]	<i>n.</i>	比赛
orgy [ˈɔːdɪ]	<i>n.</i>	无节制, 放荡
hatred [ˈheɪtrɪd]	<i>n.</i>	仇恨, 憎恶
deduce [dɪˈdjuːs]	<i>v.</i>	推断
competitive [kɒmpetɪtɪv]	<i>a.</i>	竞争性的
patriotism [ˈpætriətɪzəm]	<i>n.</i>	地方观念; 爱国主义
disgrace [dɪsˈɡreɪs]	<i>v.</i>	使丢脸
savage [ˈsævɪdʒ]	<i>a.</i>	野性的
combative [kəmˈbætɪv]	<i>a.</i>	好斗的
mimic warfare [ˈmɪmɪk əwɜːfeɪ]		模拟战争
behaviour [bɪˈheɪvɪj]	<i>n.</i>	行动, 举止
absurd [əbˈsɜːd]	<i>a.</i>	荒唐的
virtue [ˈvɜːtjuː]	<i>n.</i>	美德



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

if only	要是
have no inclination to do	不想做
do your utmost	尽最大努力
deduce...from	从……推断出

NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. If only the common peoples of the world... 这里 if only 引导的一个非真实条件句, if only 作“要是……就好了”讲。

If only one had an unlimited supply of money! 要是财源不断就好了!

2. have no inclination to do 无意做, 不想做

I have no inclination to judge for myself of the truth or exaggeration of your eulogies. 你这一篇赞美词是否真实或夸大, 我不想自己来做出判断。

3. deduce...from... 从……推断出……

I deduce from the large crowd that the speaker is very popular. 从听众很多这一点, 我可以推断出, 演讲者大受欢迎。

4. You play to win. 句子中的 you 泛指人, 可译为“人们”。

5. pick up 随意挑选

6. and, behind the spectators, of the nations 在 of the nations 前面省略了 the attitude。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

A *Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.*

absurd	goodwill	deduce	amazed	arise
utmost	prestige	significance	disgrace	inclination

- I had an _____ to study science, but my parents sent me to medical school.
- They were _____ and enchanted at the beautiful sight.
- Hemingway is an author of international _____.
- It is _____ to predict that the world will be destroyed at the end of the century.
- From her conversation I _____ that she was the only daughter of her family.
- His heart is full of _____ to all men.
- How could you _____ your brother by saying something like that?
- The truth has little _____ for us.
- He has done his _____ to help you out of your financial trouble.
- An airline pilot could fly an aircraft while smoking if no problem _____, but if something went wrong, smoking might damage his mental ability.

B *Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.*

- We _____ but could not _____ anything.
A) listen, hear B) hear, listen C) listened, hear D) listened, heard
- He is rude to everyone. He is _____ rude to the police.
A) still B) even C) ever D) yet

3. John's one of those _____ people. He always has to win.
A) competitive B) savage C) combative D) fighting
4. Don't push me. It's really against my _____ to tell you what it is about.
A) principles B) principals C) princes D) principally
5. I used to _____ reading the text aloud each morning when I was at university.
A) practice B) practise C) practising D) practicing
6. Although our team was _____ in the first round of the Football Cup, we finally _____ a silver cup.
A) beaten, win B) beat, won C) beaten, won D) beat, win
7. I want another shirt, because this one is not _____ enough.
A) lose B) loose C) lost D) loss
8. Our pity was _____ by the sight of their terrible suffering.
A) arisen B) risen C) raised D) aroused
9. The goal of our educational system is to raise the cultural _____ of our people.
A) level B) flat C) even D) smoothness
10. The Chinese are among the most hardworking _____ in the world.
A) persons B) person C) people D) peoples



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 生命如此宝贵，我可不愿冒丝毫不必要的风险。(have an inclination to do sth.)
2. 要是当初他报警该有多好，那一切就都平安无事了。(if only)
3. 看完这个恐怖电影，一想到蛇他就变得恐慌不安。(work oneself into sth.)
4. 我刚开始戴眼镜的时候，我的朋友们都拿我开玩笑。(make fun of)
5. 这次工人罢工导致了社会上的极大混乱。(lead to)
6. 从他的谈吐上看，我们可以推断出他受过极好的教育。(deduce from)
7. 我妻子竭尽全力在事业上支持我。(do one's utmost to do sth.)
8. 这位演讲者煽动得人群极其激动。(work...into)



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Playing organized sports is such a common experience in the United States. This is especially true 1 children from families and communities that have the resources needed to organize and 2 sports programs and make sure that there is easy 3 to participation opportunities. Children in low-income families and poor communities are 4 likely to take organized youth sports for granted because they often 5 the resources needed to pay for participation 6 equipment, and transportation to practices and games 7 their communities do not have resources to build and 8 sports fields and facilities.

Organized youth sports 9 appeared during the early 20th century in the United States and

other wealthy nations. They were originally developed 10 some educators and developmental experts 11 that the behavior and character of children were 12 influenced by their social surrounding and everyday experiences. This 13 many people to believe that if you could organize the experiences of children in 14 ways, you could influence the kinds of adults that those children would become.

This belief that the social 15 influenced a person's overall development was very 16 to people interested in progress and reform in the United States 17 the beginning of the 20th century. It caused them to think about 18 they might control the experiences of children to 19 responsible and productive adults. They believed strongly that democracy depended on responsibility and that a 20 capitalist economy depended on the productivity of worker.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A) among | B) within | C) on | D) towards |
| 2. A) spread | B) speed | C) spur | D) sponsor |
| 3. A) access | B) entrance | C) chance | D) route |
| 4. A) little | B) less | C) more | D) much |
| 5. A) shrink | B) tighten | C) limit | D) lack |
| 6. A) bill | B) accounts | C) fees | D) fare |
| 7. A) so | B) as | C) and | D) but |
| 8. A) maintain | B) sustain | C) contain | D) entertain |
| 9. A) last | B) first | C) later | D) finally |
| 10. A) before | B) while | C) until | D) when |
| 11. A) realized | B) recalled | C) expected | D) exhibited |
| 12. A) specifically | B) excessively | C) strongly | D) exactly |
| 13. A) moved | B) conducted | C) put | D) led |
| 14. A) precise | B) precious | C) particular | D) peculiar |
| 15. A) engagement | B) environment | C) state | D) status |
| 16. A) encouraging | B) disappointing | C) upsetting | D) surprising |
| 17. A) for | B) with | C) over | D) at |
| 18. A) what | B) how | C) whatever | D) however |
| 19. A) multiply | B) manufacture | C) produce | D) provide |
| 20. A) growing | B) breeding | C) raising | D) flying |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Sporting activities are essentially modified forms of hunting behaviour. Viewed biologically, the modern footballer is in reality a member of a hunting group. His killing weapon has turned into a harmless football and his prey (猎物) into a goalmouth. If his aim is accurate and he scores a goal, he enjoys the hunter's triumph of killing his prey.

To understand how this transformation has taken place we must briefly look back at our forefathers. They spent over a million years evolving (进化) as cooperative hunters. Their very survival depended on success in the hunting-field. Under this pressure their whole way of life, even their bodies, became greatly changed. They became chasers, runners, jumpers, aimers, throwers and prey-killers. They cooperated as skillful male-group attackers.

Then about ten thousand years ago, after this immensely long period of hunting their food, they became farmers. Their improved intelligence, so vital to their old hunting life, was put to a new use—that of controlling and domesticating their prey. The hunt became suddenly out of date. The food was there on the farms, awaiting their needs. The risks and uncertainties of the hunt were no longer essential for survival.

The skills and thirst for hunting remained, however, and demanded new outlets. Hunting for sport replaced hunting for necessity. This new activity involved all the original hunting sequencer but the aim of the operation was no longer to avoid starvation. Instead the sportsmen set off to test their skill against prey that were no longer essential to their survival, to be sure, the kill may have been eaten, but there were other, much simpler ways of obtaining a meaty meal.

1. The author believes that sporting activities _____.
 - A) are forms of biological development
 - B) are essentially forms of taming (驯服) the prey
 - C) have actually developed from hunting
 - D) have changed the ways of hunting
2. For over a million years, our forefathers were basically _____.
 - A) any member of the opposing team
 - B) the goal-mouth
 - C) the goal keeper
 - D) the football
3. For over a million years, our foregatherers were basically _____.
 - A) co-operating hunters,
 - B) successful farmers
 - C) runners and jumpers
 - D) skillful sportsmen
4. The word “operation” (Para. 4, Line 3) refers to _____.
 - A) domesticating animals
 - B) hunting
 - C) prey killing
 - D) sports activities
5. Which of the following best summarizes the main idea of the passage?
 - A) It is farming that gives human beings enough leisure time for sporting activities.
 - B) Farming is very important in human civilization because it saves human beings from risks and uncertainties of hunting for survival.
 - C) It is hunting that provides human beings with much simpler ways of obtaining meaty meals.
 - D) Sporting activities satisfy the desire of modern man to exercise hunting skills which his forefathers developed for survival.

Section C



GRAMMAR

名词性从句

一、概念

在句子中起名词作用的句子叫名词性从句。名词性从句的功能相当于名词性词组，其主要语法作用是充当主语、宾语、表语、同位语、介词宾语等。名词性从句又可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

二、引导词

引导名词性从句的连接词可分为三类。

- 疑问代词：what, who, whom, whose, which;
- 疑问副词：when, where, how, why;
- 连词：that, whether, if 等连词在名词性从句中不充当成分。

三、名词性从句的语法作用

1. 主语从句

that 在句中无词义，只起连接作用，通常不可省略；连接代词和连接副词在句中既保留自己的疑问含义，又起连接作用，在从句中充当从句的成分。例如

That he will come tomorrow is true. 他明天来是真的。

Whether he will come tomorrow is not known. 他明天是否要来还不知道。

Who will win the match is still unknown. 谁能赢得这场比赛还不得而知。

有时为避免句子头重脚轻，常用形式主语 it 代替主语从句作形式主语放于句首，而把主语从句置于句末。常用句型如下：

1) It + be + 名词 + that 从句

It is common knowledge that the whale is not a fish. 鲸鱼不是鱼是一个普通的常识。

2) It + be + 形容词 + that 从句

It is likely that he will come. 他有可能来。

3) It + be + 动词的过去分词 + that 从句

It is said that he is a famous writer. 据说他是一名知名的作家。

4) It + 不及物动词 + that 从句

It seems that he is wrong. 看起来他错了。

2. 宾语从句

在句中可以作谓语动词或介词及非谓语动词的宾语。

1) 由连接词 that 引导的宾语从句

由连接词 **that** 引导宾语从句时, **that** 在句中不担任任何成分, 在口语或非正式的文体中常被省去, 但如果从句是并列句, 第二个分句前的 **that** 不可省。例如

We must never think (that) we are good in everything while others are good in nothing. 我们决不能认为自己什么都好, 别人什么都不好。

2) 用 **who, whom, which, whose, what, when, where, why, how** 等关联词引导的宾语从句相当于特殊疑问句, 应注意句子语序要用陈述语序。例如

She always thinks of how she can work well. 她总是在想怎样能把工作做好。

She will give whoever needs help a warm support. 凡需要帮助的人, 她都会给予热情的支持。

3) 用 **whether** 或 **if** 引导的宾语从句, 其主语和谓语的顺序也不能颠倒, 仍保持陈述句语序。此外, **whether** 与 **if** 在作“是否”意思讲时, 在下列情况下一般只能用 **whether**, 不用 **if**:

- 引导主语从句并在句首时;
- 引导表语从句时;
- 引导从句作介词宾语时;
- 从句后有“or not”时;
- 后接动词不定式时。

例如

Whether there is life on the moon is an interesting question. 月球上有没有生命是个有趣的问题。

The question is whether she should have a test. 问题是她是否应该接受一个测试。

Everything depends on whether we have enough money. 一切要看我们是否有足够的钱。

I wonder whether he will come or not. 我想知道他来还是不来。

Can you tell me whether to go or to stay? 你能否告诉我是去还是留?

4) 注意宾语从句中的时态呼应, 当主句动词是现在时, 从句根据自身的句子情况, 使用不同时态。例如

He studies English every day. (从句用一般现在时)

He studied English last term. (从句用一般过去时)

I know (that) he will study English next year. (从句用一般将来时)

He has studied English since 1998. (从句用现在完成时)

当主句动词是过去时态 (**could, would** 除外) 时, 从句也要用相应的过去时态, 如一般过去时、过去进行时、过去将来时等; 若从句表示的是客观真理、科学原理、自然现象, 则从句仍用现在时态。例如

The teacher told us that Tom had left us for America.

The teacher said that the earth goes round the sun.

5) **think, believe, imagine, suppose** 等动词引起的否定性宾语从句中, 要把上述主句中的动词变为否定式, 即将从句中的否定形式移到主句中。例如

We don't think you are here. 我们认为你不在这。

I don't believe he will do so. 我相信他不会这样做。

3. 表语从句

表语从句位于连系动词后，有时用 as if 引导。其基本结构为

主语 + 系动词 + that 从句，例如

The fact is that we have lost the game. 事实是我们已经输了这场比赛。

That is why he didn't come to the meeting. 那就是他为什么不到会的原因。

当主语是 reason 时，表语从句要用 that 引导而不是 because。例如

The reason why he was late was that he missed the train.

4. 同位语从句

同位语从句说明其前面的名词的具体内容。同位语从句通常由 that 引导，可用于同位语从句的名词有 advice, demand, doubt, fact, hope, idea, information, message, news, order, problem, promise, question, request, suggestion, truth, wish, word 等，例如

The news that we won the game is exciting. 我们赢得这场比赛的消息令人激动。

I have no idea when he will come back home. 我不知道他什么时候回来。

同位语从句和定语从句的区别：

that 作为关系代词，可以引导定语从句，充当句子成分，在从句中作宾语时可以省略；that 引导同位语从句时，起连词的作用，没有实际意义，不充当句子成分，一般不能省略。试比较下面两个例句：

I had no idea that you were here. (that 引导同位语从句，不能省略)

Have you got the idea (that) this book gives you of life? (that 引导定语从句，作宾语，可以省略)

注意：

- 1) 介词后的连词不可省略；
- 2) 引导主语从句和同位语从句的连词不可省略。

That she was chosen made us very happy.

We heard the news that our team had won.



Grammar Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. _____ that they found an unusual plant in the forest.
A) It is said B) They are said C) It said D) It says
2. _____ caused the accident is still a complete mystery.
A) What B) That C) How D) Where
3. It worried Mary a lot _____ she would pass the examination.
A) whether B) if C) that D) how
4. Shanghai has taken on a new look. It isn't like _____ it used to be.
A) which B) how C) that D) what
5. _____ is no possibility _____ Bob will win the first prize in the match.
A) There, that B) It, that C) There, whether D) It, whether
6. Tommy was reluctant to tell the schoolmaster _____ he had done.

- A) that B) how C) what D) where
7. The old man smiled when he saw how pretty _____ up to be.
A) had his daughter grown B) would his daughter grow
C) his daughter would grow D) his daughter had grown
8. Have you seen Mary lately? My boss wants to know _____.
A) how she is getting along B) how is she getting along
C) what she is getting along D) what is she getting along
9. _____ surprised me was _____ this little girl could play the violin so well.
A) That, what B) What, that C) That, that D) What, what
10. These flowers are so special I would do _____ I can to save them.
A) whatever B) which C) that D) whichever
11. _____ helped to save the drowning girl is worth praising.
A) Who B) Anyone C) Whoever D) The person
12. Eat _____ you like and leave the others for _____ comes in late.
A) any; who B) every; whoever
C) whichever; whoever D) either; whoever
13. _____ she couldn't understand was _____ the students showed interest in her lessons.
A) What; why B) That; why
C) What; because D) Why; that
14. It was _____ he said _____ disappointed me.
A) What; that B) That; that C) What; what D) That; what
15. It was ordered that all the soldiers _____ to the front.
A) should send B) must be sent C) should be sent D) must go
16. The true value of life is not in _____, but _____.
A) which we get; what give we B) what we get; what we give
C) which do we get; what do we give D) how we get; that we give
17. We are all for your proposal that the discussion _____.
A) be put off B) was put off C) should put off D) is to be put off
18. Go and get your coat. It's _____ you left it.
A) where B) there C) here where D) where there
19. Sarah hopes to become a friend of _____ shares her interests.
A) anyone B) whomever C) whoever D) no matter who
20. You can't imagine _____ when they received these Christmas presents.
A) how they were excited B) how excited they were
C) how excited were they D) they were how excited

Unit Four CHARACTER

Section A



TEXT



Daniel Mendoza

Boxing matches were very popular in England two hundred years ago. In those days, boxers fought with bare fists for prize money. Because of this, they were known as “prizefighters”. However, boxing was very crude, for there were no rules and a prizefighter could be seriously injured or even killed during a match.

One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza, who was born in 1764. The use of gloves was not introduced until 1860, when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules. Though he was technically a prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport, for he brought science to the game. In his day, Mendoza enjoyed tremendous popularity. He was adored by rich and poor alike.

Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a boxing match when he was only fourteen years old. This attracted the attention of Richard Humphries who was then the most eminent boxer in England. He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn. In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him. The two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that the argument could only be settled by a fight. A match was held at Stilton, where both men fought for an hour. The public bet a great deal of money on Mendoza, but he was defeated. Mendoza met Humphries in the ring on a later occasion and he lost for a second time. It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England. Meanwhile, he founded a highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils. He earned enormous sums of money and was paid as much as \$100 for a single appearance. Despite this, he was so extravagant that he was always in debt. After he was defeated by a boxer called Gentleman Jackson, he was quickly forgotten. He was sent to prison for failing to pay his debts and died in poverty in 1836.



QUESTIONS

1. How many unsuccessful attempts did Mendoza make before becoming Champion of all England?

2. Why were boxers known as “prizefighters” two hundred years ago?
3. Why was boxing very crude in those days?
4. What was Mendoza’s chief contribution to boxing?



NEW WORDS

boxing ['b6ksi9]	<i>n.</i>	拳击
boxer ['b6ks3]	<i>n.</i>	拳击手
bare [b43]	<i>a</i>	赤裸的
prizefighter ['praiz.fait3]	<i>n.</i>	职业拳击手（尤指古时赤手拳击手）
crude [kru:d]	<i>a</i>	粗野的
marquis ['m1:kwis]	<i>n.</i>	侯爵
technically ['teknik3li]	<i>ad.</i>	严格根据法律意义地
popularity [;p6pjuəlæriti]	<i>n.</i>	名望
adore [3'd6:]	<i>v.</i>	崇拜，爱戴
alike [3'laik]	<i>ad.</i>	一样地
Fame [feim]	<i>n.</i>	名声
eminent ['emin3nt]	<i>a.</i>	著名的，杰出的
bitterly ['bit3li]	<i>v.</i>	厉害地
bet [bet]	<i>n.</i>	打赌
academy [3'kæd3mi]	<i>n.</i>	专业学校
extravagant [iks'træv3g3nt]	<i>a.</i>	浪费的，奢侈的
poverty ['p6v3ti]	<i>n.</i>	贫困



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

draw up	起草
in his day	在他全盛期
rise to fame	成名
bet on	打赌
in debt	负债



PROPER NAME

Daniel Mendoza	人名 丹尼尔·门多萨
Queensberry	姓氏 昆斯伯里
Richard Humphries	人名 理查德·汉弗莱斯
Lord Byron	拜伦勋爵
Jackson	人名 杰克逊



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. They were known as “prizefighters” 他们被称为“职业拳击手”。
be known as... 被称为……

2. until 1860, when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules 中, 以 when 引导的从句是定语从句, 修饰前面的年代 1860 年。

draw up 制定、草拟

We will draw up a ten-year housing plan. 我们将拟订十年房屋发展计划。

a set of 一套

Marquis of Queensberry 昆斯伯里侯爵, 指第 8 位昆斯伯里侯爵约翰·修托·道格拉斯 (1844—1900), 苏格兰贵族。他制定的“昆斯伯里规则”至今仍是拳击的比赛规则。

3. change...into... 把……变成……; bring...to...
 4. in his day 在他的全盛时期。day 此处指“幸运或顺利的时期”
 5. He was adored by rich and poor alike. 人们不论贫富都很崇拜他。
 rich and poor 是固定词组, 意思为富人和穷人。有的形容词可用作名词, 但前面要加 the。
 6. rise to fame 成名
 He often dreams of a rapid rise to fame. 他常梦想一举成名。
 7. Humphries turned against him 汉弗莱斯与他反目为敌。
 8. at Stilton, where both men fought for an hour 中, 以 where 引导的从句作 Stilton 的定语。
 9. bet on... 在……上押 (赌金)
 10. It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries... 这是一个 it 的强调句。被强调的部分 not until his third match in 1790 放在 It was 之后, 句子的其他部分放在引导词 that 之后。
 11. be in debt 负债



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word.

- Mary's popularity is shown by the fact that she has lots of friends around her.
 A) fame B) favor C) reward D) gift
- The car is much too extravagant for us to buy.
 A) economical B) costly C) expensive D) sparing.
- Jack blamed himself bitterly for missing a golden opportunity.
 A) strongly B) smartly C) keenly D) violently
- The crude life of our ancestors (祖先) in the remote past is strange for us.
 A) cultivated B) rough C) wild D) raw
- France is known for tremendous restaurants.
 A) unpopular B) enormous C) reasonable D) immense
- Beyond the plain the mountains were brown and bare.

- A) undressed B) covered C) dressed D) uncovered
7. The outcome of his appeal (请求) is still doubtful.
A) unlikely B) believable C) obscure D) doubtable
8. Perhaps this might be a favorable opportunity to me.
A) beneficial B) good C) agreeable D) cheering
9. If you are industrious, you can finish this work before dark.
A) active B) busy C) sluggish D) painstaking (辛苦的)
10. His moderate approach to the crisis (危机) kept everyone calm.
A) mild B) extreme C) indifferent D) general



Phrase Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. His sickness _____ him _____ a miserable old man
A) changed, from B) prevented, from
C) changed, into D) kept, from
2. This phenomenon (现象) _____ economic crisis.
A) is known as B) is known to C) is known for D) is known
3. The meeting _____ a sudden close when the chairman became ill.
A) was brought to B) was brought on
C) was brought up D) was brought down
4. It is foolish to _____ horses.
A) bet B) bet on C) bet in D) bet with
5. They have to _____ the freedom to industrialize their economies.
A) fight for B) fight with C) fight against D) fight to
6. His gambling (赌博) losses put him deeply _____.
A) into debt B) in debt C) to debt D) with debt
7. Sometimes you had to _____ deadly mistakes.
A) pay down B) pay back C) pay off D) pay for
8. The complete specification must be _____ by the end of this month.
A) drawn off B) drawn up C) drawn on D) drawn from
9. That is _____ to say I'm a liar.
A) as much as B) so much C) as much D) much as
10. Many of his former associates _____ him when it became known that how he had abused his position of trust.
A) turned about B) turned down C) turned against D) turned in



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 运输部门正采取措施解决假日交通拥挤的问题。
2. 飞机在着陆前绕机场盘旋。
3. 这房间整洁得让人怀疑是否真有人住过。
4. 法律要求父母必须让子女受教育。
5. 解放前赌博在中国非常普遍。

Section B



TEXT



Youth

People are always talking about “the problem of youth”. If there is one—which I take leave to doubt—then it is older people who create it, not the young themselves. Let us get down to fundamentals and agree that the young are after all human beings—people just like their elders. There is only one difference between an old man and a young one: the young man has a glorious future before him and the old one has a splendid future behind him: and maybe that is where the rub is.

When I was a teenager, I felt that I was just young and uncertain—that I was a new boy in a huge school, and I would have been very pleased to be regarded as something so interesting as a problem. For one thing, being a problem gives you a certain identity, and that is one of the things the young are busily engaged in seeking.

I find young people exciting. They have an air of freedom, and they have not a dreary commitment to mean ambitions or love of comfort. They are not anxious social climbers, and they have no devotion to material things. All this seems to me to link them with life, and the origins of things. It's as if they were, in some sense, cosmic beings in violent and lovely contrast with us suburban creatures. All that is in my mind when I meet a young person. He may be conceited, ill-mannered, presumptuous or fatuous, but I do not turn for protection to dreary clichés about respect of elders—as if mere age were a reason for respect. I accept that we are equals, and I will argue with him, as an equal, if I think he is wrong.



QUESTIONS

1. How does the writer like to treat young people?

2. What is the one difference between an old man and a young one according to the writer?
3. Why would the writer have been pleased to have been regarded as a problem when he was young?
4. Name three qualities in young people which the author particularly admires.



NEW WORDS

leave [li:v]	n.	允许
fundamentals [ˌfʌndə'mentl]	n.	基本原则
glorious ['glɒ:riəs]	a.	光辉灿烂的
splendid ['splendid]	a.	灿烂的
rub [rʌb]	n.	难题
identity [aɪ'dentiti]	n.	身份
dreary ['driəri]	a.	沉闷的
mean [mi:n]	a.	吝啬, 小气
social climber		追求更高社会地位的人, 向上爬的人
devotion [di'vʌʃn]	n.	热爱
cosmic ['kɒzmik]	a.	宇宙的
suburban [sʌ'bʌ:bʌn]	a.	见识不广的, 偏狭的
conceited [kɒn'si:tid]	a.	自高自大的
presumptuous [pri'zʌmptʃuəs]	a.	自以为是的, 放肆的
fatuous ['fætʃuəs]	a.	愚蠢的
cliché [əkli:ʒe]	n.	陈词滥调



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

take leave to do sth	擅自做
get down to	认真处理
for one thing	首先
air of freedom	无拘无束



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. which I take leave to doubt 这是一个插入成分, 用两个破折号与句子的主要部分分开。
take leave to do sth. 擅自做, 冒昧去做
2. get down to 认真处理, 认真研究
He got down to his work after the holiday. 度假之后他开始专心工作。
3. ...that is where the rub is. There's the rub. = That's the problem. 这就是问题所在。
4. for one thing 首先, 一则
e.g. For one thing, I have no time; for another (thing), I have no money. 一则, 我没有时间; 二则, 我没有钱。
5. air of freedom 无拘无束
They have an air of freedom, and they have not a dreary commitment to mean ambitions or

love of comfort. 他们无拘无束，既不追逐卑鄙的名利，也不贪图生活的舒适。

6. in some sense 在某种意义上

It's as if they were in some sense cosmic beings. 从某种意义上看来，他们似乎是宇宙人。

7. turn to...for... 为……而求助于……



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

ill-mannered	dreary	devotion	seem	in some sense
origin	glorious	mean	after all	create

1. It's a _____ morning! Let's go for a long walk in the country.
2. The man's _____ to his family is well known.
3. "Do any of you know the _____ of the word cliché?" asked the teacher.
4. The boy was asked to leave because he was so _____.
5. The weather here is so _____; it's cloudy and we haven't seen the sun for days!
6. Don't be angry with Oliver. _____, he is only a child.
7. You shouldn't jump to conclusions. I think _____ he may be right.
8. My nose keeps running. It _____ I might be catching a cold.
9. The Bible says that God _____ Eve from one of Adam's ribs.
10. Don't be so _____! I know you can afford to give some money to charity.



Phrase Exercises

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. My _____ brother has just got married. His wife is two years _____ than him.
A) elder, elder B) eldest, elder C) elder, older D) older, elder
2. I know that he seldom _____ unscheduled appointments. But it may be different this time.
A) agrees B) does C) wishes D) agrees to
3. What are the main differences _____ crows, rooks and jackdaws?
A) among B) between C) in D) within
4. Anderson ate dinner at the homes of his six friends in turn. In each home, the children _____ him for stories.
A) begged B) pleased C) pleaded D) delighted

5. Whoever argues with the dictionary is _____ as out of his mind.
A) looked at B) looked C) regarded D) respected
6. That is the most _____ film of the year. I felt very _____ after seeing it.
A) excited, excited B) exciting, excited
C) excited, exciting D) exciting, exciting
7. He is a most _____ man. I became _____ in him the first time I met him.
A) interested, interested B) interesting, interesting
C) interesting, interested D) interested, interesting
8. The _____ of the fire was a cigarette-end.
A) reason B) cause C) motive D) basis
9. His illness got him _____ taking part in the sports meet.
A) down to B) out of C) round D) about
10. The man went to prison, but the woman _____ with only a \$200 fine.
A) got off B) got out C) got about D) got over



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English using the words or phrases provided in brackets.

- 我真的必须开始抓紧扩大自己的词汇量了。(get down to)
- 我们得讨论解决问题的方法了。(get round)
- 为了教育这些残疾儿童，她做出了自己最无私的奉献。(commitment)
- 他上大学时开始对化石感兴趣。(become interested)
- 我们不能仅仅因为这位百万富翁的妻子比他小 30 岁，就把他的死与谋杀联系起来。(link with)
- 当在陌生的城市感到孤独时，我总能从音乐中得到安慰。(turn to...for)
- 史密斯夫人的急性子和史密斯先生的慢性子恰好形成了鲜明的对比。(in contrast with)
- 安徒生被认为是那个时代最伟大的作家之一。(regard as)
- 他说起话来好像很有经验的样子，可实际上他完全没有经验。(as if)
- 如果你想念家人的话，那么最好给他们打电话。(if...then)



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Albert Einstein is said to have been asked by a student, “what finding helped you most when you were 1 the theory of relativity?” Einstein replied without 2 moment’s hesitation. “Finding how to 3 about the problem.”

The same 4 is told about Sir Isac Newton and 5 other scientists. We have no proof 6 any of these well-known conversations 7 took place, but we are prepared to 8 that they did, and, if so, that the 9 was the same one Einstein gave, 10 this is the “way scientists work 11 science progresses.”

Scientists usually work toward models of the process of structure they are studying. 12 we have models of the structure 13 the universe and of the atom, models of the process 14 which the genetic (遗传的) pattern is passed from one building block of life to 15 models of the economic system and 16 on. Some models are mathematical, but a 17 does not have to have equations (方程) or even diagrams; the 18 requirement is no doubt that it 19 an insight (洞察) into the relationships that determine 20 something works as it does or how it is put together.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A) designing | B) inventing | C) revealing | D) developing |
| 2. A) a | B) the | C) an | D) some |
| 3. A) know | B) lean | C) think | D) argue |
| 4. A) event | B) news | C) story | D) information |
| 5. A) any | B) more | C) few | D) several |
| 6. A) that | B) since | C) which | D) as |
| 7. A) forget | B) actually | C) eventually | D) regularly |
| 8. A) reflect | B) consider | C) believe | D) realize |
| 9. A) question | B) answer | C) conversation | D) topic |
| 10. A) although | B) because | C) unless | D) once |
| 11. A) while | B) or | C) and | D) but |
| 12. A) Otherwise | B) Nevertheless | C) Still | D) Thus |
| 13. A) of | B) in | C) with | D) over |
| 14. A) for | B) by | C) on | D) to |
| 15. A) either | B) other | C) both | D) another |
| 16. A) so | B) later | C) further | D) straight |
| 17. A) structure | B) pattern | C) process | D) model |
| 18. A) urgent | B) important | C) original | D) unnecessary |
| 19. A) provide | B) will provide | C) provided | D) is provided |
| 20. A) when | B) what | C) why | D) whether |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions

Engineering students are supposed to be examples of practicality and rationality, but when it comes to my college education I am an idealist and a fool. In high school I wanted to be an electrical engineer and, of course, any sensible student with my aims would have chosen a college

with a large engineering department, famous reputation and lots of good labs and research equipment. But that's not what I did.

I chose to study engineering at a small liberal-arts (文科) university that doesn't even offer a major in electrical engineering. Obviously, this was not a practical choice; I came here for more noble reasons. I wanted a broad education that would provide me with flexibility and a value system to guide me in my career. I wanted to open my eyes and expand my vision by interacting with people who weren't studying science or engineering. My parents, teachers and other adults praised me for such a sensible choice. They told me I was wise and mature beyond my 18 years, and I believed them.

I headed off to college sure I was going to have an advantage over those students who went to big engineering "factories" where they didn't care if you have values or were flexible. I was going to be a complete engineer: technical genius and sensitive humanist (人文学者) all in one.

Now I'm not so sure. Somewhere along the way my noble ideals crashed into reality, as all noble ideals eventually do. After three years of struggling to balance math, physics and engineering courses with liberal-arts courses, I have learned there are reasons why few engineering students try to reconcile (协调) engineering with liberal-arts courses in college.

The reality that has blocked my path to become the typical successful student is that engineering and the liberal arts simply don't mix as easily as I assumed in high school. Individually they shape a person in very different ways; together they threaten to confuse. The struggle to reconcile the two fields of study is difficult.

1. The author chose to study engineering at a small liberal-arts university because he _____.
 - A) wanted to be an example of practicality and rationality
 - B) intended to be a combination of engineer and humanist
 - C) wanted to coordinate engineering with liberal-arts courses in college
 - D) intended to be a sensible student with noble ideals
2. According to the author, by interacting with people who study liberal arts, engineering students can _____.
 - A) balance engineering and the liberal arts
 - B) receive guidance in their careers
 - C) become noble idealists
 - D) broaden their horizons
3. In the eyes of the author, a successful engineering student is expected _____.
 - A) to have an excellent academic record
 - B) to be wise and mature
 - C) to be imaginative with a value system to guide him
 - D) to be a technical genius with a wide vision

4. The author's experience shows that he was _____.
A) creative B) ambitious C) unrealistic D) irrational
5. The word "they" in "... together they threaten to confuse." (Line 3, Para. 5) refers to _____.
A) engineering and the liberal arts
B) reality and noble ideals
C) flexibility and a value system
D) practicality and rationality

Section C



GRAMMAR

倒装句

一、概念

英语的基本语序是“主语 + 谓语”，如果将谓语的全部或部分放在主语之前，那么这种语序称为倒装句。将谓语的全部提到句首，称为全部倒装；将谓语的助动词或情态动词提到句首，称为不完全倒装。

二、倒装句的作用

1. 语法结构的需要

May I come in?

2. 为了强调句子的某一部分，把这部分提到句首，构成倒装

Never have I seen such a performance.

三、倒装句的用法

1. 完全倒装

1) 副词 here, there, in, out, up, down, away, back, now, then, ahead 等位于句首，当谓语动词是 come, go, follow, run 等表示位置移动的动词，而且主语又是名词时，需要把谓语动词放在主语之前，即全部倒装。

Away went the runners. 选手们跑远了。

Round and round flew the plane. 飞机盘旋着飞远了。

2) Here 与 there 位于句首的倒装。

Here 与 there 位于句首时，如果主语是人称代词，谓语不倒装。

Here he comes. 他来了。

Here you are. 给你。

3) 状语或表语位于句首时的倒装。

为了使句子平衡或上下文联系紧密，有时可将状语或表语放在句首，句中主语和谓语全

部倒装。

Among those people was his friend Jim. 吉姆在那些人当中。

By the window sat a young man with a book in his hand. 在窗户旁坐着一位年轻人，手里拿着一本书。

4) 有时为了强调，可将谓语部分的现在分词、过去分词和不定式提到句首，构成倒装。

Buried in the sands was an ancient village. 沙里埋葬着一个古老的村庄。

Standing beside the table is his wife. 桌子旁站着他的妻子。

To be carefully considered are the following questions. 应该仔细考虑的是下列问题。

2. 不完全倒装

1) 用于“only + 状语”开头的句子。

① only + 介词短语

Only in this way can we learn English well. 只有用这种方式我们才能学好英语。

② only + 副词

Only then did he know he was wrong. 只有那时他知道他错了。

③ only + 状语从句

Only after his mother came back did he begin to do his homework. 只有当他妈妈回来时，他才开始写作业。

2) 句首为否定副词 never, seldom, little, hardly, barely, scarcely, rarely, 助动词提前。

Never have I seen such a performance. 我从来没看到这种表演。

Hardly will you find the answer to this question. 他几乎不能发现这个问题的答案。

3) not...until 的用法。

将 not 与 until 引导的时间状语从句一起提到句首，助动词提前。

Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room. 直到孩子睡了，他妈妈才离开屋子。

4) no sooner...than, hardly...when...引导的句子。

No sooner had he finished his homework than he began to go home. 他一完成作业就回家。

Hardly had he finished his work when he began to help others. 他一完成作业就回家。

5) not only...but also 将 not only 引导的句子或短语提到句首，助动词提前。

Not only is the teacher interested in football but his students show an interest in it. 不但老师喜欢足球，他的学生也喜欢。

Not only is he a teacher, but also a good friend. 他不但是老师，也是个好朋友。

6) 以 on no condition, at no time, by no means 等表示否定的介词短语，提到句首，助动词提前。

At no time do you do it once more. 你绝不能再做它。

By no means do they go out without permission. 没经过允许，他们不能出去。

7) 为了避免句子重复，在前后两句表达同样含义的情况下，前面否定，后者用 neither；前面肯定，后者用 so。

He likes watching TV, so do I. 他喜欢看电视，我也喜欢。

They go out to play football, so do we. 他们出去踢足球，我们也去。

He does not like watching TV, neither do I. 他不喜欢看电视，我也不喜欢。

They do not go out to play football, neither do we. 他们不出去踢足球，我们也不去。

8) 若 if 引导的虚拟条件句中有 were, had, should 时，可将 if 省略，把 were, had, should 放在主语之前。

Should it rain tomorrow, we would put off the visit. 明天如果下雨，我们就延期参观。

Were I you, I would go. 如果我是你，我就去。

9) 在表示愿望的感叹句中，用部分倒装。

May our country become rich and strong! 祝愿我们的国家富强！

Long live the People's Republic of China! 中国万岁！



Grammar Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

- Not until I began to work ____ how much time I had wasted.
A) didn't I realize B) did I realize C) I didn't realize D) I realized
- Only by practising a few hours every day ____ be able to master the language.
A) you can B) can you C) you will D) will you
- If you don't go, neither ____.
A) shall I B) do I C) I do D) I shall
- No sooner ____ to the station ____ the train left.
A) had I got, when B) I had got, than
C) had I got, than D) did I get, when
- Your father is very strict with you. _____. He never lets off a single mistake of ours
A) So he is B) So is he C) He is so D) So does he
- _____ today, he would get there by Sunday.
A) Would he leave B) Was he leaving
C) Were he to leave D) If he leave
- Never in my life ____ such a thing.
A) I have heard or have seen B) have I heard or seen
C) I have heard or seen D) did I hear or see
- Here ____! Where is Xiao Liu? There _____.
A) comes the bus, is he B) comes the bus, he is
C) the bus comes, is he D) the bus comes, he is
- _____, I will not buy it.
A) Much as do I like it B) As much I like it.
C) Much as I like it D) As I like it much
- Not only ____ a promise, but also he kept it.
A) did he make B) he made C) does he make D) has he made

11. _____ the expense, I _____ to Italy.
A) If it were not, go B) Were it not for, would go
C) Weren't it for, will go D) If it hadn't been, would have gone
12. So _____ in the darkness that he didn't dare to move an inch.
A) he was frightened B) was he frightened
C) frightened he was D) frightened was he
13. Not until he arrived home _____ he find that this wallet had been stolen.
A) did B) would C) when D) that
14. Not only _____ his work, but also he did it perfectly.
A) did he finish B) he made C) does he make D) has he made
15. Little _____ about his own health though he was very ill.
A) he cared B) did he care C) he cares D) does he care
16. We were lucky enough, for no sooner _____ home _____ it rained.
A) we returned; and B) we had returned; when
C) did we return; when D) had we returned; than
17. _____ he realized it was too late to return home.
A) No sooner it grew dark than B) Hardly did it grow dark when
C) It was not until dark that D) It was until dark that
18. _____, he would have passed the exam.
A) If he were to study B) If he studied hard
C) Had he studied hard D) Should he study hard

Unit Five TRAFFIC

Section A



A day to remember

We have all experienced days when everything goes wrong. A day may begin well enough, but suddenly everything seems to get out of control. What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment. It is as if a single unimportant event set up a chain of reactions. Let us suppose that you are preparing a meal and keeping an eye on the baby at the same time. The telephone rings and this marks the prelude to an unforeseen series of catastrophes. While you are on the phone, the baby pulls the tablecloth off the table, smashing half your best crockery and cutting himself in the process. You hang up hurriedly and attend to baby, crockery, etc. Meanwhile, the meal gets burnt. As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner.

Things can go wrong on a big scale, as a number of people recently discovered in Parramatta, a suburb of Sydney. During the rush hour one evening two cars collided and both drivers began to argue. The woman immediately behind the two cars happened to be a learner. She suddenly got into a panic and stopped her car. This made the driver following her brake hard. His wife was sitting beside him holding a large cake. As she was thrown forward, the cake went right through the windscreen and landed on the road. Seeing a cake flying through the air, a lorry driver who was drawing up alongside the car, pulled up all of a sudden. The lorry was loaded with empty beer bottles and hundreds of them slid off the back of the vehicle and on to the road. This led to yet another angry argument. Meanwhile, the traffic piled up behind. It took the police nearly an hour to get the traffic on the move again. In the meantime, the lorry driver had to sweep up hundreds of broken bottles. Only two stray dogs benefited from all this confusion, for they greedily devoured what was left of the cake. It was just one of those days!

**QUESTIONS**

1. What can mark the beginning of an unforeseen series of catastrophes while you are preparing a meal?
2. Why are your husband's guests not welcome?
3. What began all the trouble in Parramatta recently?
4. What incident began the series of traffic accidents?

**NEW WORDS**

prelude ['preljʊ:d]	n.	序幕, 前奏
unforeseen [ː2nf6:'si:n]	a.	意料之外的
series ['si:ri:z]	n.	系列
catastrophe [k3'tæstr3fi]	n.	大祸, 灾难
crockery ['kr6k3ri]	n.	陶器, 瓦器
suburb ['s2b3:b]	n.	郊区
collide [k3'laid]	v.	猛撞
learner ['l3:n3]	n.	初学者
panic ['pænik]	n.	惊慌, 恐慌
windscreen ['winds kri:n]	n.	(汽车的) 挡风玻璃
alongside [3'l6ŋ'said]	prep.	在……的旁边, 与……并排
slide [slaid]	v.	滑(slid slid)
stray [streɪ]	a.	迷失的, 离群的
confusion [k3n'fju:=3n]	n.	混乱
greedily ['gri:dili]	ad.	贪婪地
devour [di'vau3]	v.	狼吞虎咽地吃

**PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS**

get out of control	失去控制
keep an eye on	照看, 照管
on the phone	接电话
on a big scale	大规模地
rush hour	上下班高峰时

**PROPER NAME**

Parramatta	澳大利亚 帕拉马塔
Sydney	澳大利亚 悉尼

**NOTES TO THE TEXT**

1. A day may begin well enough, but suddenly everything seems to get out of control. 一天开始时, 可能还不错, 但突然间似乎一切都失去了控制。

get out of control 失去控制

2. It is as if a single unimportant event set up a chain of reactions. 就好像一件无关紧要的小事引起了一连串的连锁反应。

as if 引导的从句中用的是虚拟语气。

e.g. She treats him as if he were a stranger. 她待他如陌生人。

set up 引起, 产生

a chain of 一连串

3. keep an eye on 照看, 照管

e.g. Keep the family computer in an accessible part of the house where you can easily keep an eye on your children's activity, and limit the amount of time your kids spend online. 将家用电脑搁在屋子里你视线所及的地方, 以便随时留意孩子的行为, 并限制孩子的上网时间。

4. you are on the phone 你在接电话

5. As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner. 好像这一切还不足以使你急得掉泪, 你的丈夫接着回来了, 事先没打招呼就带来3个客人吃饭。

reduce you to tears 使你流泪

6. on a big scale 大规模地

Tom is a proven man. They know he can make the operation go on a big scale. 汤姆是个久经考验的行家, 他们相信他有能力把这个生意搞大。

7. rush hour 上下班时间

It is rush hour and we crawl along at 15 miles an hour. 遇上了尖峰时间, 我们的车子以每小时十五英里的速度缓慢行驶。

8. draw up 追上

9. pull up 停车

The driver pulled up at the gate. 司机在大门前停下车子。

10. get the traffic on the move 使车辆动起来

After the terrible clash in the fog, it was several hours before the traffic could get on the move again. 在雾中发生严重撞车事件之后, 过了几小时交通才得以恢复。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word.

1. Leaving his bench, Soapy strolled out of the park.

A) walked for pleasure

B) ran for exercise

C) left unwillingly

D) rolled for pleasure

2. He would pull himself up and become a better man.
A) stand up B) push forward C) improve D) pick himself up
3. The cat chased the mouse but couldn't catch it.
A) drove away B) tried to find
C) followed rapidly in order to catch D) pick himself up
4. His play had poor success.
A) succeeding B) result C) successful D) following
5. He was shaved.
A) come close to
B) touched
C) cut off in thin pieces from the surface
D) cut off hair from the face of oneself or another person
6. He smashed his foot through the thin door.
A) threw forcefully B) divided
C) shattered D) caused to break into pieces
7. Business is slow just now.
A) not going on quickly B) become slower
C) not very active, dull D) taking a long time
8. The policeman brought in two boys whom he caught stealing.
A) gave a decision in court B) took to the police station
C) took from a dangerous place D) produced as profit or income
9. Even before a baby is born, tiny teeth are developing within its gums (牙床).
A) next to B) inside C) behind D) in front of
10. There are two distinct (明显的) climatic regions in the state of Washington.
A) periods B) currents C) zones D) area



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

get out of control	keep an eye on
in the process	get into a panic
pull up	draw up
all of a sudden	on the move
benefit from	in the meantime

1. All the living things on the earth _____ the sun.
2. The taxi _____ in front of the station.
3. I'm busy. Can you _____ the baby?
4. She suddenly _____ at the red light.
5. _____ everyone started shouting and singing when they heard the good news.

6. I started to move the chain but dropped a vase _____.
7. It was such a mess! The foot got burned, and _____, the telephone rang.
8. The plane _____ and the passengers were dead unfortunately.
9. It was several hours before the traffic was _____ again.
10. When the plane hit the building, everyone _____.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

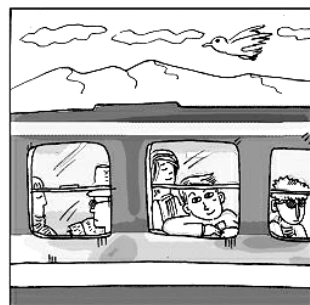
1. 汽车突然失去了控制。
2. 莉莉正在接电话。
3. 我做饭的时候你能不能帮我照看孩子。
4. 我前面的车突然停下来了。
5. 警察使车辆又动了起来。

Section B



TEXT

The Westhaven Express



We have learnt to expect that trains will be punctual. After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables. Ships may be delayed by storms; flights may be cancelled because of bad weather, but trains must be on time. Only an exceptionally heavy snowfall might temporarily dislocate railway services. It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities when something does go wrong. The truth is that when mistakes occur, they are more likely to be ours than theirs.

After consulting my railway timetable, I noted with satisfaction that there was an express train to Westhaven. It went direct from my local station and the journey lasted a mere hour and seventeen minutes. When I boarded the train, I could not help noticing that a great many local people got on as well. At the time, this did not strike me as odd. I reflected that there must be a great many local people besides myself who wished to take advantage of this excellent service. Neither was I surprised when the train stopped at Widley, a tiny station a few miles along the line. Even a mighty express train can be held up by signals. But when the train dawdled at station after station, I began to wonder. It suddenly dawned on me that this express was not roaring down the line at ninety miles an hour, but barely chugging along at thirty. One hour and seventeen minutes passed and we had not even covered half the distance. I asked a passenger if this was the Westhaven Express, but he had not even heard of it. I determined to lodge a complaint as soon as we

arrived. Two hours later, I was talking angrily to the station master at Westhaven. When he denied the train's existence, I borrowed his copy of the timetable. There was a note of triumph in my voice when I told him that it was there in black and white. Glancing at it briefly, he told me to look again. A tiny asterisk conducted me to a footnote at the bottom of the page. It said: "This service has been suspended."



QUESTIONS

1. What was the mistake the author made?
2. Why have we developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables?
3. How long was the journey from the writer's village to Westhaven supposed to take by express train?
4. How did the writer explain the fact that many local people boarded the train at the same time as he did?



NEW WORDS

express [iks'pres]	<i>n.</i>	快车
	<i>a.</i>	高速的
punctual ['pʌŋktjuəl]	<i>a.</i>	准时的
condition [kən'diʃn]	<i>v.</i>	使习惯于
unshakable [ˌʌn'seɪkəbl]	<i>a.</i>	不可动摇的
faith [feɪθ]	<i>n.</i>	信任
cancel ['kænsəl]	<i>v.</i>	取消
exceptionally [ɪk'sepʃənli]	<i>ad.</i>	例外地
dislocate ['dɪsləkeɪt]	<i>v.</i>	打乱 (计划等)
blame [bleɪm]	<i>v.</i>	责怪
consult [kən'sʌlt]	<i>v.</i>	请教, 查阅
direct [dɪ'rekt]	<i>ad.</i>	径直地
odd [ɒd]	<i>a.</i>	奇怪的, 异常的
reflect [rɪ'flekt]	<i>v.</i>	细想
advantage [əd'vɑːntɪdʒ]	<i>n.</i>	优势
mighty ['maɪti]	<i>a.</i>	强大的, 有力的
dawdle ['dɔːdl]	<i>v.</i>	慢吞吞地动或做
chug [tʃʊg]	<i>v.</i>	咔嚓咔嚓地响
lodge [lɒdʒ]	<i>v.</i>	提出
complaint [kəm'pleɪnt]	<i>n.</i>	抱怨
triumph ['traɪʌmf]	<i>n.</i>	胜利
asterisk ['æstərɪsk]	<i>n.</i>	星号 (*)
conduct [kən'dʌkt]	<i>v.</i>	引向, 引导



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

strike sb as odd	使某人感到奇怪
take advantage of	利用

dawn on sb.
in black and white

某人明白
白纸黑字



PROPER NAME

Westhaven
Widley

地名 美国 韦斯特黑文
地名 威得利



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. they are more likely to be ours than theirs 这些错误往往是我们而不是铁路局造成的。
they 指 mistakes。
2. I could not help noticing that... 我不禁注意到……
can't help doing 禁不住……
e.g. Sometimes you just can't help doing something special. 有时候你就是会忍不住做些特别的事。
3. strike me as odd 使我感到奇怪
4. take advantage of 利用
e.g. He took advantage of the good weather to go for a walk. 他趁着天气好，出去散散步。
5. Neither was I surprised 这是以 neither 开头的句子，要用倒装语序。
6. It suddenly dawned on me... 我突然明白了……
e.g. I was about to pay for the shopping when it suddenly dawned on me that I'd left my cheque book at home. 我刚要付钱买东西，突然想起我把支票簿放在家里了。
7. a note of triumph 胜利者的调子
8. in black and white 白纸黑字



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the best answer which is similar to the following underlined word.

1. The angry elephant crashed through the forest toward the hunter's camp.
A) moved violently and noisily B) came into ruin
C) fell noisily and suddenly D) ran
2. He is under stress because his wife is very ill.
A) force or pressure caused by difficulties in life
B) weight caused by something heavy
C) a sense of special importance
D) thirsty

3. A cycle of the sun takes a year.
A) bicycle B) bike
C) environment D) number of related events happening in a regularly repeated order
4. He dislocated a finger.
A) had... out of joint B) disturbed C) disordered D) broken
5. I've tried for weeks to find the answer to the question of what could have made Eric so angry that he hasn't written to us.
A) puzzle out B) puzzle over C) puzzle my brain D) crash
6. It was a great triumph when our team won the race.
A) success B) failure C) trip D) succeed
7. Is there a relation between the sun and the seasons?
A) a relationship B) the act of connecting C) regard D) context
8. Sales have reached a new peak.
A) sharply pointed mountain up B) highest point in a record of figures
C) tiny drop D) height
9. Until about a century ago, the deep-ocean floor was completely unreachable, hidden beneath waters averaging over 3,600 meters deep.
A) unrecognizable B) out of reach C) uncomfortable D) unsafe
10. After the peak year of 1957, the birth rate in Canada began to decline.
A) pointed B) middle C) mountain D) top



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

go wrong	with satisfaction
cannot help	a great many
strike sb as odd	take advantage of
be held up	dawn on sb
a note of triumph	in black and white

1. He _____ in the heavy traffic.
2. We can recognize _____ in his voice.
3. Everything _____ on the same day.
4. His strange behavior _____.
5. "You don't believe me? It is written in the newspaper _____!"
6. It finally _____ me that the old man was the Prime Minister.
7. I _____ crying when I heard that he would leave the country.
8. He always _____ the mistakes of his rivals.
9. After a whole day's cleaning, he looked at the tidy house _____.
10. _____ tigers have disappeared due to excessive hunting.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 航班因为恶劣的天气被取消了。
2. 一开始, 我并不觉得这奇怪。
3. 火车以每小时 90 千米的速度运行。
4. 我迅速地扫了一眼时间表。
5. 这趟列车暂停运行。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

The United States is well-known for its network of major highways designed to help a driver get from one place to another in the shortest possible time. 1 these wide modern Roads are generally 2 and well maintained, with 3 sharp curves and many straight 4, a direct route is not always the most 5 one. Large highways often pass 6 scenic areas and interesting small towns. Furthermore, these highways generally 7 large urban centres which means that they become crowded with 8 traffic during rush hours, 9 the “fast, direct” way becomes a very slow route.

However, there is 10 always another route to take 11 you are not in a hurry. Not far from the 12 new “superhighways”, there are often older, 13 heavily traveled roads which go through the countryside. 14 of these are good two-lane (双车道) roads; others are uneven roads 15 through the country. These secondary routes may go up steep slopes, along high 16, or down frightening hillsides to towns 17 in deep valleys. Through these less direct routes, longer and slower, they generally go to places 18 the air is clean and the scenery (风景) is beautiful, and the driver may have a 19 to get a fresh, clean 20 of the world.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A) Although | B) Because | C) Since | D) Therefore |
| 2. A) stable | B) splendid | C) smooth | D) complicated |
| 3. A) little | B) few | C) much | D) many |
| 4. A) selections | B) separations | C) series | D) sections |
| 5. A) terrible | B) possible | C) enjoyable | D) profitable |
| 6. A) to | B) into | C) over | D) by |
| 7. A) lead | B) connect | C) collect | D) communicate |
| 8. A) large | B) fast | C) light | D) heavy |
| 9. A) when | B) for | C) but | D) that |
| 10. A) yet | B) still | C) almost | D) quite |
| 11. A) unless | B) if | C) as | D) since |
| 12. A) relatively | B) regularly | C) respectively | D) reasonably |
| 13. A) and | B) less | C) more | D) or |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 14. A) All | B) Several | C) Lots | D) or |
| 15. A) driving | B) crossing | C) curving | D) traveling |
| 16. A) rocks | B) cliffs | C) roads | D) paths |
| 17. A) lying | B) laying | C) laid | D) lied |
| 18. A) there | B) when | C) which | D) where |
| 19. A) space | B) period | C) chance | D) spot |
| 20. A) view | B) variety | C) visit | D) virtue |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Believe it or not, optical illusion (错觉) can cut highway crashes. Japan is a case in point. It has reduced automobile crashes on some roads by nearly 75 percent using a simple optical illusion. Bent stripes, called chevrons (人字形), painted on the roads make drivers think that they are driving faster than they really are, and thus drivers slow down.

Now the American Automobile Association Foundation for Traffic Safety in Washington D.C. is planning to repeat Japan's success. Starting next year, the foundation will paint chevrons and other patterns of stripes on selected roads around the country to test how well the patterns reduce highway crashes.

Excessive speed plays a major role in as much as one fifth of all fatal traffic accidents, according to the foundation. To help reduce those accidents, the foundation will conduct its tests in areas where speed-related hazards are the greatest—curves, exit slopes, traffic circles, and bridges.

Some studies suggest that straight, horizontal bars painted across roads can initially cut the average speed of drivers in half. However, traffic often returns to full speed within months as drivers become used to seeing the painted bars.

Chevrons, scientists say, not only give drivers the impression that they are driving faster than they really are but also make a lane appear to be narrower. The result is a longer lasting reduction in highway speed and the number of traffic accidents.

1. The passage mainly discusses _____.
 - A) a new way of highway speed control
 - B) a new pattern for painting highways
 - C) a new approach to training drivers
 - D) a new type of optical illusion
2. On roads painted with chevrons, drivers tend to feel that _____.
 - A) they should avoid speed-related hazards
 - B) they are driving in the wrong lane
 - C) they should slow down their speed
 - D) they are approaching the speed limit

3. The advantage of chevrons over straight, horizontal bars is that the former _____.
A) can keep drivers awake
B) can cut road accidents in half
C) will have a longer effect on drivers
D) will look more attractive
4. The American Automobile Association Foundation for Traffic Safety plans to _____.
A) try out the Japanese method in certain areas
B) change the road signs across the country
C) replace straight, horizontal bars with chevrons
D) repeat the Japanese road patterns
5. What does the author say about straight, horizontal bars painted across roads?
A) They are falling out of use in the United States.
B) They tend to be ignored by drivers in a short period of time.
C) They are applicable only on broad roads.
D) They cannot be applied successfully to traffic circles.

Section C



GRAMMAR

定语从句（一）

一、概念

由关系代词或关系副词引导，用来修饰主句中某一个名词或代词并起定语作用的从句，叫定语从句。定语从句所修饰的名词或代词叫先行词。定语从句通常出现在先行词之后，由关系词（关系代词或关系副词）引出。

引导定语从句的关联词称为关系词，关系词有关系代词和关系副词两种。

关系代词有 *that, which, who, whom, whose* 等，没有 *what*；

关系副词有 *where, when, why, how* 等。

二、关系代词的用法

关系代词在定语从句中代替先行词，代替的词性是名词或代词，在从句中充当主语、宾语、定语等成分。关系代词在定语从句中作主语时，从句谓语动词的人称和数要和先行词保持一致。

1. *who* 指人，在从句中作主语。

The boys *who* are playing football are from Class One. 在踢足球的男孩们是一班的。

Yesterday I helped an old man *who* lost his way. 昨天，我帮助了一个迷路的老人。

2. *whom* 指人，在从句中作宾语，常省略。

（注：*who* 和 *whom* 已无太大区别，基本可以通用。区别是 *who* 可以作主语而 *whom* 不可以。）

Mr. Liu is the person (whom) you talked with on the bus. 刘先生就是在公交车上和你聊天的那个人。

Mr. Ling is just the man (whom) I want to see. 凌先生恰巧就是我想见的那个人。

The man who/whom you met just now is my friend. 你刚刚见到的那个人就是我的朋友。

3. whose 指人, 也可指物, 在定语从句中作定语。

He has a friend whose father is a doctor. 他有一个父亲是医生的朋友。

I once lived in a house whose roof has fallen in. 我曾居住在一个屋顶倒下的房子里。

4. which 指物, 在定语从句中作主语或者宾语, 作宾语时可省略。

Football is a game which is liked by most boys. 足球是大多数男孩都喜欢的游戏。

This is the pen (which) he bought yesterday. 这是他昨天刚买的钢笔。

5. that 指人, 也可指物。指人时, 相当于 who 或者 whom; 指物时, 相当于 which, 可代替 who, whom, which, 在定语从句中作主语或者宾语, 作宾语时可省略。

The number of the people that/who come to visit the city each year rises to one million.

Where is the man that/whom I saw this morning?

注: 在下列情况中只用 that 不用 which:

- 1) 先行词是 anything, everything, nothing, none 等不定代词时;
- 2) 先行词由 every, any, all, some, no, little, few, much 等修饰时;
- 3) 先行词前有 the very, the only, the last, the next 修饰或序数词或形容词最高级修饰时;
- 4) 先行词中既有人又有物时;
- 5) 整个句中前面已有 which 时。

三、关系副词引导的定语从句

1. when 指时间, 在定语从句中作时间状语。

I still remember the day when I first came to the school. 我还记得我来学校的那一天。

The time when we got together finally came. 我们聚在一起的时间终于来了。

2. where 指地点, 在定语从句中作地点状语。

Shanghai is the city where I was born. 上海是我出生的地方。

The house where I lived ten years ago has been pulled down. 我十年前住的房子已经推倒了。

3. why 指原因, 在定语从句中作原因状语。

Please tell me the reason why you missed the plane. 请告诉我你错过飞机的原因。

I don't know the reason why he looks unhappy today. 我不知道他看起来不高兴的原因。

4. how 指方式, 在定语从句中作方式状语。

This is the way how I deal with it. 这就是我解决这个问题的方式。

The way how I solve the problem has not been found. 我解决问题的方式还没找到。

Unit Six VESSEL

Section A



TEXT

The Loss of the Titanic



The great ship, Titanic, sailed for New York from Southampton on April 10th, 1912. She was carrying 1,316 passengers and a crew of 891. Even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship. At that time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments. Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float. The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.

Four days after setting out, while the Titanic was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a lookout. After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision. The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her. Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see what had happened. The noise had been so faint that no one thought that the ship had been damaged. Below, the captain realized to his horror that the Titanic was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded! The order to abandon ship was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water. As there were not enough lifeboats for everybody, 1,500 lives were lost.



QUESTIONS

1. When did the Titanic set out from Southampton?
2. What happened once the iceberg had been spotted?
3. Why did the Titanic sink ?



NEW WORDS

colossal [k3'l6sl]

watertight ['w6:t3tait]

a. 庞大的

a. 不漏水的

compartment [k3m'p1:tm3nt]	<i>n.</i>	(轮船的) 密封舱
flood [fl2d]	<i>v.</i>	充满水
float [fl3ut]	<i>v.</i>	漂浮, 飘浮
tragic ['træd=ik]	<i>a.</i>	悲惨的
liner ['lain3]	<i>n.</i>	班船
voyage ['v6iid=]	<i>n.</i>	航行
iceberg ['aisb3:g]	<i>n.</i>	冰山
lookout ['luk'aut]	<i>n.</i>	瞭望员
collision [k3'li=3n]	<i>n.</i>	碰撞
narrowly ['nær3uli]	<i>ad.</i>	刚刚, 勉强地
miss [mis]	<i>v.</i>	避开
slight [slait]	<i>a.</i>	轻微的
tremble [ətreml]	<i>v.</i>	震颤
faint [feint]	<i>a.</i>	微弱的
horror [əh6r3]	<i>n.</i>	恐惧
abandon [3'bænd3n]	<i>v.</i>	抛弃
plunge [pl2nd=]	<i>v.</i>	投入, 跳入
lifeboat ['laifb3ut]	<i>n.</i>	救生船



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

not only...but	不但……而且
be regarded as	被看做
even if	即使
plunge into	跳入
to one's horror	使某人感到惊奇的是
sail for	驶往



PROPER NAME

Southampton	<i>n.</i>	南安普敦 (英国港口城市)
-------------	-----------	---------------



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship. 即使按照现代标准来衡量, 46,000 吨的“泰坦尼克”号也算得上一艘巨轮了。
2. regarded as unsinkable 被认为是不会沉没的
3. she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life. 她首航就下沉, 造成大批人员伤亡。
4. narrowly missing 勉强避开
5. Below, the captain realized to his horror... 在下面, 船长惊恐地发现……



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

horror	colossal
abandon	tremble
collision	tragic

1. The _____ between the ships was caused by fog.
2. Her voice _____ with anger.
3. We should not expose our children to _____.
4. This is indeed a _____ success.
5. The broken bike was found _____ by the river side.
6. I was shocked by the news of the _____ death of his twin brother.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

sail for	even if
be regarded as	plunge into
to one's horror	not only...but

1. The boys _____ the river to swim.
2. Our ship _____ Hong Kong tomorrow.
3. He _____ the best doctor in town.
4. He will come on time _____ it rains.
5. _____, I heard a strange noise at midnight suddenly.
6. He _____ did it by himself, _____ helped others.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. He worked _____ (如此努力, 以致通过了考试).
2. _____ (即使他昨天来了), we couldn't have finished our work.
3. She is not only a colossal ship, _____ (也是一条不可沉的船).
4. _____ (使她感到恐惧的是), the ship is sinking.
5. She _____ (被认为是这个地区最著名的医生).

Section B



TEXT



A Lost Ship

The salvage operation had been a complete failure. The small ship, Elkor, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks, was on its way home. A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him to give up the search. The captain knew that another attempt would be made later, for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

Despite the message, the captain of the Elkor decided to try once more. The sea bed was scoured with powerful nets and there was tremendous excitement on board when a chest was raised from the bottom. Though the crew were at first under the impression that the lost ship had been found, the contents of the chest proved them wrong. What they had in fact found was a ship which had been sunk many years before.

The chest contained the personal belongings of a seaman, Alan Fielding. There were books, clothing and photographs, together with letters which the seaman had once received from his wife. The captain of the Elkor ordered his men to salvage as much as possible from the wreck. Nothing of value was found, but the numerous items which were brought to the surface proved to be of great interest. From a heavy gun that was raised, the captain realized that the ship must have been a cruiser. In another chest, which contained the belongings of a ship's officer, there was an unfinished letter which had been written on March 14th, 1943. The captain learnt from the letter that the name of the lost ship was the Karen. The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it was still possible to read. From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light. The Karen had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the Elkor had returned home. All the items that were found were sent to the War Museum.



QUESTIONS

1. Why had the salvage operation been a complete failure?
2. What did the crew think when a chest was raised from the bottom?
3. Why was the log book the most important?
4. Who was Alan Fielding?

**NEW WORDS**

salvage ['sælvɪd=]	v.	救助, 打捞, 营救
sunken ['sʌŋkən]	a.	沉没的
cargo ['kɑːɡɒ]	n.	货物
bullion ['bʊljən]	n.	金条; 银条
scour [ə'skaʊ]	v.	彻底搜索
chest [tʃest]	n.	大箱子
contents ['kɒntents]	n.	(复数) 所装的东西
item ['aɪtəm]	n.	物件
cruiser ['kruːzə]	n.	巡洋舰
find [faɪnd]	n.	找到的物品
piece [piːs]	v.	拼成整体
convoy ['kɒnvɔɪ]	n.	护航
torpedo [tɒː'piːdʒu]	v.	用鱼雷攻击
submarine [ˌsʌbmə'riːn]	n.	潜水艇
naval ['neɪvəl]	a.	海军的
ministry ['mɪnɪstri]	n.	(政府的) 部

**PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS**

make an attempt to do sth	尝试做某事
under the impression that	认为
log book	航海日志
piece together	拼接
come to light	搞清, 知道

**PROPER NAME**

Barents	n.	巴伦支 (海)
---------	----	---------

**NOTES TO THE TEXT**

1. on its way home 在返航途中
2. for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion. 因为他试图寻找的沉船上载有一批珍贵的金条。
3. be of great interest 极大的兴趣
4. The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it was still possible to read. 打捞到的东西中最有价值的是船上的航海日志, 其中有一部分仍然清晰可读。
parts of which it was still possible to read. which 是先行词 log book, 引导的定语从句, 它是形式主语, 不定式 to read 是真实主语, parts of which 是 read 的宾语。
5. From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light
据此, 船长可以将所有的那些已经搞清的材料拼凑起来。

piece together 拼接, 拼凑
 come to light 被搞清, 被知道

6. The Karen had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. 卡伦号当年在为其他船只护航驶往俄国的途中突然遭到敌方潜水艇鱼雷的袭击。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

salvage	valuable	precious	confirm	tremendous
attempt	convoy	scour	emerge	date

- The Chinese people were among the first in 2009 to _____ from the economic downturn.
- _____ of the wreck was made difficult by bad weather.
- Its origin _____ back to remote antiquity.
- I made no _____ to make friends with her.
- This merchant ship was _____ by a destroyer (驱逐舰).
- It makes a _____ difference to me.
- His impertinent remarks wasted _____ time.
- A prodigal (浪子) who returns is more _____ than gold.
- We _____ through the fields, looking for stray sheep.
- This agreement still needs to be _____ by the Congress.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

instruct	prove...to...
under the impression that	together with
of great interest	in a convoy
piece together	come to light

- The officials argue that these have _____ only because of the climate of greater security in the country.
- From what you had told me, I am _____ there will be no steel production if there is no water.
- The difficulty was how he could _____ his ideas _____ other scientists.
- A boy, _____ his friend, has waited for three hours there.

5. We're seeking positive ID on target traveling _____.
6. The detectives tried to _____ the facts.
7. Please _____ your banker to transfer the USD funds
8. Whether they were pre-specified may be _____ to reviewers.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 我们都以为这艘船沉了。
2. 如果你想知道真相就得把所有信息拼凑起来。
3. 这个箱子里放着他的私人物品。
4. 这些物品引起了大家的极大兴趣。
5. 我们没有发现有价值的东西。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

When dawn came, they realized that the entire boat was encased in ice. The captain had fallen asleep but 1 the crew hurriedly woke him. He took a small axe and with great care, 2 a hole in the dark, he began to knock the ice away. From time to time a wave burst over the boat and swept over him, but he kept 3 for ten minutes while the others looked 4 anxiously. By this time, he was so cold that he could no longer trust his grip, or balance.

Each member of the crew took it in turn to cut the ice away for 5 he could bear it. First, they had to knock off enough ice to get on their 6. Standing up on that rolling deck 7, committing suicide because a man who had fallen 8 could not have been rescued.

Then the captain discovered that ice was forming inside the cabin. He called to one of the crew and together they managed 9 the stove slight in the hope that it would 10 enough heat to warm the cabin above 11. Unless the ice in the bottom could be melted enough so that 12 pumped out, they were in danger of sinking.

It took 13 before the boat began to float better. But 14 this time they succeeded 15 most of the ice.

Through the afternoon, the coating of ice began to build up again 16 their work. 17 this new danger, the captain decided that there was too much 18 to gamble on the chance that the boat 19 until the next morning. 20, he ordered the crew to clear the ice. Then they settled down to wait for another day.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A) all of | B) the rest of | C) other | D) the other of |
| 2. A) so as not to do | B) or not making | C) for not doing | D) so as not to make |
| 3. A) to work | B) to working | C) on working | D) on work |
| 4. A) at him | B) on him | C) by him | D) for him |
| 5. A) so long as | B) as long as | C) so far as | D) as far as |

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 6. A) legs | B) ankles | C) knees | D) thighs (大腿) |
| 7. A) had been | B) would have been | C) had to be | D) should be |
| 8. A) overboard | B) at sea | C) to see | D) out of board |
| 9. A) make | B) set | C) getting | D) to get |
| 10. A) get out | B) give off | C) get over | D) give in |
| 11. A) low temperature | C) frozen point | B) ice point | D) freezing point |
| 12. A) it could be | B) it would be | C) it may be | D) to be |
| 13. A) an hour work | B) an hour's work | C) the work of an hour | D) a work hour |
| 14. A) meanwhile | B) since | C) for | D) during |
| 15. A) to take off | B) in disposing | C) in getting rid of | D) to remove |
| 16. A) in spite of | B) although | C) whatever | D) nevertheless |
| 17. A) In front of | B) Beside | C) In the face of | D) Against |
| 18. A) on risk | B) at play | C) in trial | D) at stake (火刑柱) |
| 19. A) would outlive | B) would survive | C) should survive | D) should outlive |
| 20. A) Another time | B) One more time | C) Once more | D) Now and again |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Merchant ships are designed to carry cargo. Some are also designed to carry passengers. They can operate as liners (班轮). These are employed on regular routes on a fixed timetable. A list of their arrival and departure dates is published in advance and they sail whether full or not. Liners can be classed as either deep-sea liners or short-sea liners. The former carry mainly containerized cargo across the oceans of the world; the later carry containerized or conventional cargo on shorter routes. Ferries (渡轮) are also classed as liners. These offer a daily or weekly service for passengers and vehicles across channels and narrow seas. A few ships are still employed as passenger liners. They not only carry passengers but also some cargo on routes from Europe to North America and to the Far East. Nowadays the passenger trade is very small and passenger liners usually operate as cruise ships for part of the year.

- The deep-sea liners _____.
 A) carry mainly containerized cargo
 B) carry mainly conventional cargo
 C) offer a daily or weekly service for passengers and vehicles
 D) sail across channels and narrow seas
- The Liners _____.
 A) always sail full
 B) sail regularly even not full
 C) always sail in ballast
 D) will not sail if not full
- A list of the arrival and departure dates of liners _____.
 A) will be published weekly

- B) will be published when they sail, whether full or not, from Europe to North America and to the Far East
- C) will not be published even they sail fully loaded
- D) is published prior to their departure
4. It is implied in the passage that _____.
A) the number of passenger ships is small
B) all passenger ships will carry some cargo in near future
C) it is not necessary for liners to sail in regular time
D) container carriers should carry some passengers

Section C



定语从句（二）

四、引导词的相互转换

1. 在定语从句中，关系代词 *whose* 常用以下结构来代替
whose = *sth. of which*; *whose* = *sth. of whom*

The classroom *whose* door is broken will soon be repaired.

The classroom the door of *which* is broken will soon be repaired.

门坏了的那间教室很快修好。

Do you know the boy *whose* leg was broken?

Do you know the boy the leg of *whom* was broken?

你认识腿坏了的那个男孩吗？

2. 关系代词与关系副词的转换

介词 + 关系代词 = 关系副词

The reason *why/ for which* he refused the invitation is not clear. 他拒绝邀请的原因不清楚。

From the year *when/in which* he was going to school he began to know what he wanted when he grew up. 从他要上学的那一年，他开始知道当他长大后他想要的东西。

五、谓语动词中介词的位置

在定语从句中，介词可以放在关系代词前面，关系代词只能用 *which*, *whom* 即“介词+*which/ whom*”且不能省略；介词也可位于句末，可用 *that/ which/ who/ whom* 作介词的宾语，且可以省略。例如

The school (*that, which*) he once studied in is very famous.

The school in which he once studied is very famous.

他曾经学习的那个学校很著名。

I will bring here a magazine (that, which) you asked for.

I will bring here a magazine for which you asked.

我要把你想要的杂志带给你。

We'll hear the famous singer (whom, that, who) we have talked about.

We'll hear the famous singer about whom we have talked.

我们要听一名我们谈论的著名歌手演唱。

注意:

1. 固定的动词短语不能拆开使用, 如 look for, look after, take care of 等。如

This is the watch which (that) I am looking for. (正确)

This is the watch for which I am looking. (错误)

2. 若介词放在关系代词前, 关系代词指人时用 whom, 不可用 who 或者 that; 指物时用 which, 不能用 that; 关系代词是所有格时用 whose。

1) 你谈论的那个人是我的一个朋友。

The man with whom you talked is my friend. (正确)

The man with that you talked is my friend. (错误)

2) 我们乘坐的飞往加拿大的飞机很舒适。

The plane by which we flew to Canada is very comfortable. (正确)

The plane in that we flew in to Canada is very comfortable. (错误)

六、非限定性定语从句

非限定性定语从句的作用是对所修饰的成分做进一步说明, 通常是引导词和先行词之间用逗号隔开, 将从句拿掉后其他部分仍可成立。

1. 当先行词是专有名词或物主代词和指示代词所修饰时, 其后的定语从句通常是非限制性的, 例如

Charles Smith, who was my former teacher, retired last year. 查理·史密斯去年退休了, 他曾经是我的老师。

My house, which I bought last year, has got a lovely garden. 我去年买的那幢房子带着个漂亮的花园。

This novel, which I have read three times, is very touching. 这本小说很动人, 我已经读了三遍。

2. 非限制性定语从句还能将整个主句作为先行词, 对其进行修饰, 这时从句谓语动词要用第三人称单数, 例如

He seems not to have grasped what I meant, which greatly upsets me. 他似乎没抓住我的意思, 这使我心烦。

Liquid water changes to vapor, which is called evaporation. 液态水变为蒸汽, 这就叫做蒸发。



Grammar Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. This is the bag _____ my mother bought yesterday.
A) that B) who C) whom D) this
2. The man _____ lives next to us is my English teacher.
A) whom B) which C) who D) /
3. The only language _____ is easy to learn is the mother tongue.
A) which B) that C) / D) it
4. The girl handed everything _____ she had picked up in the street to the police.
A) which B) in which C) that D) all
5. _____ cleans the blackboard should be praised.
A) That B) Who C) The one who D) The students who
6. Please show me the book _____ you bought yesterday.
A) which B) whom C) whose D) this
7. This is the best book _____ I have been looking for all this year.
A) who B) whom C) which D) that
8. Is this the shop _____ sells children's clothing?
A) which B) where C) in which D) what
9. I still remember the sitting-room _____ my mother and I used to sit in the evening.
A) what B) which C) that D) where
10. This is the school _____ Mr. Smith once taught.
A) in that B) when C) where D) there
11. Have you visited the house _____ the famous scientist was born?
A) where B) in that C) that D) which
12. The factory _____ Mr. Li used to work was closed last week.
A) when B) where C) that D) which
13. Do you still remember the day _____ we first met?
A) that B) when C) what D) on that
14. The time _____ we studied together is not easily forgotten.
A) when B) that C) where D) which
15. October 1, 1949 is the day _____ we'll never forget.
A) when B) that C) where D) in which
16. October 1, 1949 was the day _____ the People's Republic of China was founded.
A) which B) when C) where D) in which

Unit Seven WEATHER AND CLIMATE

Section A



TEXT



The Cause of the El Nino Phenomenon

El Nino is the Spanish name for the baby Jesus. The phenomenon is so-called because warm water moving across the Pacific traditionally reaches South America around Christmas. Scientists have now applied the term El Nino to the major warming episodes over large South American coastal areas and westernly along the equator and the Dateline area. Scientists noted the El Nino has a return period of four to five years and lasts between 12—18 months.

In the late 1960s, it became apparent that the year-to-year variations in the sea surface temperature and consequently El Nino events, were closely linked to the Southern Oscillation, a relationship between atmospheric pressure over the southeastern Pacific and Indian Ocean. When pressure is high in the Pacific Ocean, it tends to be low in the Indian Ocean from Africa to Australia. These conditions are associated with low temperatures in both these areas and rainfall varies in the direction opposites the pressure. Thus, the combination of El Nino and Southern Oscillation (ENSO) is the linkage between atmospheric and oceanic events and involves changes in circulations of the atmosphere and oceans across the Pacific Basin. The strongest El Nino this century occurred in 1982—1983 and resulted in droughts and disastrous forest fires in Indonesia and Australia, wreaking economic damage of at least US \$8 billion.

A major warming of the ocean waters across the eastern and central tropical Pacific Ocean, known as ENSO, has developed since March 1997. The El Nino developed very rapidly during April and May, and reached strong intensity by June. This event is currently comparable in magnitude and extent to the 1982/1983 episode.



QUESTIONS

1. Can you figure out the origin of the name “El Nino”? Why is it so-called?
2. How often does the El Nino take place?
3. What did the 1960s El Nino have to do with?
4. When did the strongest El Nino occur this century?



NEW WORDS

phenomenon [fɪnəˈmɪnəm]	<i>n.</i>	现象 (pl. phenomena)
Jesus ['dʒiːzʌs]	<i>n.</i>	耶稣
episode ['epɪsɒd]	<i>n.</i>	插曲; 一段情节
apparent [əˈpærənt]	<i>a.</i>	明显的, 显而易见的
consequently [ˌkɒnsɪkwəntli]	<i>ad.</i>	因此, 所以
oscillation [ˌɒsɪˈleɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	波动; 震动; 震荡
atmospheric [ˌætəˈmɪsˌfɛrɪk]	<i>a.</i>	大气的, 空气的; 大气层的, 大气中的
rainfall ['reɪn.fɔːl]	<i>n.</i>	(降) 雨量; 一场雨
linkage ['lɪŋkɪdʒ]	<i>n.</i>	联系; 连锁; 联动
oceanic [ˌɒʃənɪk]	<i>a.</i>	海洋的
circulation [ˌsɜːkjʊˈleɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	循环
drought [draʊt]	<i>n.</i>	干旱; 缺乏
disastrous [dɪˈzɪːstrəs]	<i>a.</i>	灾难性的
wreak [rɪːk]	<i>v.</i>	发泄, 报仇; 造成 (破坏等)
tropical ['trɒpɪkəl]	<i>a.</i>	热带的
intensity [ɪnˈtensɪti]	<i>n.</i>	强度, 密集度; 强烈
comparable ['kɒmpərəbl]	<i>a.</i>	可比较的; 类似的
magnitude ['mæɡnɪtjuːd]	<i>n.</i>	巨大; 广大; 积; 量



NEW WORDS

apply... to	适用于; 向……申请
associate with	联合; 与……常在一起, 和……联想在一起
result in	导致, 结果是
El Nino	厄尔尼诺
Dateline area	日界线区域, 国际日期变更线区域
the Pacific Basin	太平洋盆地



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. The phenomenon is so-called because warm water moving across the Pacific traditionally reaches South America around Christmas. 这种现象之所以这么称呼, 是因为穿越太平洋的暖流通常在圣诞节前后到达南美。
so-called 所谓的, 号称的

2. Scientists have now applied the term El Nino to the major warming episodes over large South American coastal areas and westernly along the equator and the Dateline area. 现在科学家用“厄尔尼诺”这个术语命名在大片南美沿海区域和沿赤道、国际日期变更线以西的主要暖流。

warming episode 暖流, 通常作 warm current.

3. In the late 1960s, it became apparent that the year-to-year variations in the sea surface temperature and consequently El Nino events, were closely linked to the Southern Oscillation, a relationship between atmospheric pressure over the southeastern Pacific and Indian Ocean. 20 世纪 60 年代后期, 有一点越来越明显, 海面温度的年度变化、厄尔尼诺现象的持续均与南部震动现象有很密切的联系, 这种震动现象是与太平洋东南部和印度洋气压之间的关系分不开的。

consequently 因此, 所以。表示前面的原因所引起的结果。

4. Thus, the combination of El Nino and Southern Oscillation (ENSO) is the linkage between atmospheric and oceanic events and involves changes in circulations of the atmosphere and oceans across the Pacific Basin. 这样, 厄尔尼诺与南部震动现象的结合就成为大气和海洋现象之间的联接, 这种结合也包括了大气和穿越太平洋盆地的大洋环流的变化。

句子的主语是 the combination of El Nino and Southern Oscillation, 句子的谓语是 and 连接的 is 和 involves。

5. The strongest El Nino this century occurred in 1982—1983 and resulted in droughts and disastrous forest fires in Indonesia and Australia, wreaking economic damage of at least US \$8 billion. 在 1982—1983 年间, 发生了本世纪最强的厄尔尼诺现象, 导致印度尼西亚和澳大利亚的干旱和森林大火, 至少造成 80 亿美元的经济损失。

句子的主语是 The strongest El Nino, 谓语为 occurred 和 resulted。

6. A major warming of the ocean waters across the eastern and central tropical Pacific Ocean, known as ENSO, has developed since March 1997. 从 1997 年 3 月起, 穿越东部和中部热带的太平洋海水开始变暖, 这就是众所周知的厄尔尼诺现象。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

combination

disastrous

magnitude

comparable

apparent

linkage

episode

variation

circulation

phenomenon

1. This _____ of characters is unique in the section.
2. It was one of the funniest _____ in my life.
3. Because these clothes are handmade, there may be some slight _____ in colour.
4. A heart is _____ with a pump.
5. Bad _____ makes one feel cold.
6. His grief was _____ to me.
7. Snow in Egypt is almost an unknown _____.
8. Australia is a land of contrast— in one place there are long lasting droughts and in another there are _____ floods.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

at the mercy of

apply... to

associate with

result in

as regards

back and forth

aside from

by accident

above all

at intervals

1. The workers find themselves absolutely _____ the capitalists.
2. He fluttered _____ in the corridor.
3. These regulations _____ everyone, without exception.
4. We have worked together like brothers and I feel honored to have the chance to live, work and _____ them.
5. The dissatisfaction of the workmen _____ a strike.
6. There exist serious problems in the administration regulations of college teaching _____ humanistic care.
7. Everything was quiet, _____ the occasional sound of a car in the distance.
8. It is well known that Columbus' discovery of America took place _____, but few Americans admit it.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. Scientific discoveries _____ industrial and agricultural production methods. (科学发现常被应用于工农业生产方法上。)
2. In building fires, smoke is one of the primary factors which _____

death. (建筑火灾中, 烟气是导致人员伤亡的最主要因素之一。)

3. _____ the humble and the simple, with the devout and virtuous, and with them speak of edifying things. (要结交谦逊的人、虔诚的人和有德性的人, 和他们谈论有益的事。)

4. Solitude and exhaustion were just _____ factors that he faced each day. (孤独和疲劳仅仅是每天他所面临的一些原因中的两个。)

5. His ability is open to question, but his honesty is _____. (他的能力是令人怀疑的, 但他的诚实是无可争辩的。)

Section B



TEXT



Australia

A little over two centuries ago this was virgin territory—a vast virtually unknown continent. It is a land of amazing landscapes and of astonishing beauty, above and below the waves. It is, of course, Australia.

The first settlement here was named after Lord Sidney, the British home secretary at the time. Today Sidney is the largest city in a powerful and prosperous nation. It is home to more than three and a half million people. Both are members of the Commonwealth and their people share a common head of state, a language, a political system and a whole cultural heritage.

For centuries, Europeans have suspected there was a great southern continent, and adventurers long sought it. But history credits the English mariner captain James Cook with the voyage of “Discovery” that finally put Australia on the map. More than two centuries ago his ship “The Endeavor” made landfall on the eastern seaboard to claim this continent for Britain. The voyage was recently recreated.

Rockhampton was uninhabited. Today there are more than a million and a half of its aboriginal population; a Paleolithic culture who settled here 12 thousand years ago. Britain and Australia retain strong connections as business partners and through the many cultural and family connections. Young Australians fought and died alongside the British and the other allies in two World Wars. Today, young Aussies regularly head for Europe and especially the UK.

Not much seems to happen in Australia’s outback. There are just miles and miles of almost empty land. There’s the strangest bird in the world and you won’t get very far without seeing kangaroos or even if you are lucky koala bears. Apart from that and farming there doesn’t seem to be much else. But there is money being made in this stark landscape.

An old enterprise has recently become one of Australia's fastest growing industries. Wine exports have boomed beyond anyone in Australia's wildest dreams. They've grown from less than 8 million liters to some 130 million, in only ten years.

So there is rather more to the outback than wildlife and dusty tracks. The Australian wine industry began at Sydney Cove in 1788 and the settlers from Britain had high hopes for their vines. The then governor wrote, "In a climate so favorable the wines may become an indispensable part of the luxury of European tables." His foresight was quite extraordinary since the wines from these vineyards now grace the tables not only of Europe but of almost the whole world.



QUESTIONS

Decide true (T) or false (F) of the following statements according to the text.

1. Sidney is the second largest city in Australia. ()
2. It is the English mariner captain James Cook's voyage of "Discovery" that finally put Australia on the map. ()
3. Today there are less than a million of its aboriginal population in Rockhampton. ()
4. Aussies benefit a lot from Australia's outback. ()
5. The Australian wine industry began at Sydney Cove in 1788 and the settlers from Britain had high hopes for their vines. ()



NEW WORDS

virgin ['v3:d=in]	a.	处女的; 纯洁的; 未经利用的
territory ['terit3ri]	n.	领土, 领域
landscape [ə'ændskeip]	n.	风景, 景色
astounding [ə'stəndiŋ]	a.	惊人的; 令人惊讶的
settlement [ə'setlmənt]	n.	殖民地; 租借地; 拓居地
prosperous ['prɒspərəs]	a.	繁荣的; 兴旺的
adventurer [əd'ventʃərə]	n.	冒险家; 投机商人
credit ['kredit]	n. & v.	信用, 信誉; 信任; 把……归给, 归功于
mariner ['mærinə]	n.	海员, 水手; 航海者
landfall ['lændfɜ:l]	n.	着陆; 初见陆地; 到达陆地
seaboard ['si:bɔ:d]	n.	海滨; 沿海地方; 海岸线
uninhabited [ˌʌnɪn'hæbɪtɪd]	a.	无人居住的, 杳无人迹的
aboriginal [ˌæbə'ridʒənəl]	a.	土著的; 原始的
	n.	土著居民; 土生生物
paleolithic [ˌpæliθi'ɒləjɪk]	a.	旧石器时代的
ally [ə'laɪ]	n. & v.	同盟国; 伙伴; 同盟者; 联合; 结盟
outback ['aʊtbæk]	n.	内地
stark [stɑ:k]	a.	荒凉的, 光秃秃的, 寸草不生的
enterprise [ˌentɜpraɪz]	n.	企业; 事业; 进取心; 事业心

boom [bu:m]	v.	急速发展; 发隆隆声
liter ['li:tɜ]	n.	(= litre) 公升 (容量单位)
cove [k3uv]	n.	小湾, 小海湾
favorable ['feiv3r3bl]	a.	有利的; 良好的
indispensable [;indiɒspens3b3l]	a.	不可缺少的; 绝对必要的; 责无旁贷的
luxury ['l2k73ri]	n.	奢侈, 奢华; 奢侈品; 享受
foresight ['f6:sait]	n.	先见, 远见; 预见; 深谋远虑
vineyard ['vinj3d]	n.	葡萄园



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

name (sb./ sth.) after sb	给 (某人/某物) 取名; 命名
credit sb. with sth.	认为某人有某事物, 把某事物归功于某人
head for	向……行进



PROPER NAME

Commonwealth	联邦; 共和国
The Endeavor	努力号
Paleolithic culture	旧石器时代文化
Aussie	澳大利亚人 (口语, 俚语)
Sydney Cove	悉尼湾



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. A little over two centuries ago this was virgin territory—a vast virtually unknown continent.
两个多世纪以前, 这里还是一块处女地——一片不为人所知的广袤土地。
virgin territory 处女地
virtually 事实上, 几乎, 差不多
2. The first settlement here was named after Lord Sidney, the British home secretary at the time.
这里的第一个殖民地是以英国当时的内政大臣, 贵族领主悉尼的名字命名的。
The British home secretary at the time 作为 Lord Sidney 的同位语成分。
3. It is home to more than three and a half million people. 她是 350 多万人共同的家园。
home to... 是……的产地/故乡
4. For centuries, Europeans have suspected there was a great southern continent, and adventurers long sought it. 多少个世纪以来, 欧洲人一直怀疑有一个南部大陆, 并且长途跋涉追寻着它。
sought 寻找, seek 的过去式和过去分词。
5. Rockhampton was uninhabited. Today there are more than a million and a half of its aboriginal population; a Paleolithic culture who settled here 12 thousand years ago. 罗克汉普顿过去荒无人烟, 如今这里拥有 150 多万土著居民以及一万两千年前生存在这里的人们所创造的旧石器时代文化。

was 表明是过去的（荒无人烟的）状态。

6. Apart from that and farming there doesn't seem to be much else. 除了这些和农场，那里似乎没什么别的。

apart from 的宾语为 that and farming。

7. The then governor wrote, "In a climate so favorable the wines may become an indispensable part of the luxury of European tables." 当时的总督写道：“在如此适宜的气候条件下，这酒会成为欧洲豪华餐桌上不可缺少的一部分”。

then 意为“当时的”。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

enterprise	credit	prosperous	astonishing	territory
foresight	luxury	indispensable	favorable	boom

- After their misfortunes the family slowly became_____.
- Flying is a stressful thing and if an air hostess can ease that tension, it will make a /an _____ impression for the airline.
- Bright diamond, _____ sculpt, delicate design, and delicate cutting make the best explanation for the elegance.
- Failure in this final stage means failure of the whole _____.
- She is _____ with having saved the company from bankruptcy.
- Lions roar to define their _____ and the thundering sound can be heard from several kilometers away.
- The frontier town _____ when gold was discovered nearby.
- The computer is now a / an _____ tool in many businesses.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

head for	participate in	come across	name after	keep up with
give up	instead of	credit with	far from	now that

- You ought to have a good rest _____ you've finished the work.
- Let's play cards _____ watching television.
- A man of learning, if he does not wish to degrade himself, must never cease to _____ public affairs.
- Tasmania was _____ its discoverer, A. J. Tasman.

5. _____ relieving my cough, the medicine aggravated it.
6. We saw him _____ us, so we stepped aside.
7. The relics are _____ miraculous powers.
8. Young girls like to _____ the latest fashions.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. When you get married, will you _____? (你结婚后会不会辞去工作?)
2. I am sure the wide awake people of this country will _____. (我相信这个国家的有识之士肯定会参加这场辩论。)
3. One glance in the mirror revealed that it was _____. (只要往镜子里一瞥就能揭示他说的根本不是事实。)
4. _____ you are a college student, you should learn to be independent of your parents' help. (既然你长大了, 就不应该依靠你的父母。)
5. He _____ to have further business talk on cooperation of the engineering project. (他赴澳大利亚就工程项目合作事宜做进一步的商务洽谈。)



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Last summer, 1 Atlantic ocean was strangely calm. During the usually stormy months between July and November, only one hurricane was recorded, 2 there are 3 seven or eight. This was one effect of El Nino. Its 4 effects were far less beneficent (慈善的). Droughts and flooding crippled parts of the tropics, 5 the storms that failed 6 in the Atlantic instead swept across the Pacific, battering (连续猛击) the western states of 7. Even the semi-desert state of Arizona did not 8 the deluge (洪水).

El Nino 9 for a long time. It was first 10 by Peruvian fishermen, who noticed that the sea warmed up every few years around Christmas time. They 11 the phenomenon El Nino, 12 is Spanish for "the child", and 13 to the young Christ.

In more 14 years, climatologists (气候学家) have 15 that El Nino appears every two to seven years. Its 16 is still unknown, but it's clear that when it does appear, it can disrupt weather 17 over three quarters of the globe. In fact, after the El Nino of 1982/ 83, climatologists realized that it affects the world's weather systems more than any other 18 19 the seasons. That El Nino killed over 2000 people in floods and droughts and caused \$ 13 billion worth of 20.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. A) a | B) the | C) an | D) / |
| 2. A) when | B) where | C) which | D) that |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 3. A) normaly | B) frequently | C) scarcely | D) hardly |
| 4. A) another | B) other | C) some | D) others |
| 5. A) when. | B) as | C) while | D) because |
| 6. A) appear | B) to appear | C) appearing | D) appeared |
| 7. A) the Americas | B) Americas | C) the Americans | D) Americans |
| 8. A) avoid | B) suffer | C) suffer from | D) escape |
| 9. A) is existed | B) has been existed | C) is existing | D) has existed |
| 10. A) looked | B) observed | C) watched | D) glanced |
| 11. A) named | B) were named | C) were called | D) defined |
| 12. A) that | B) who | C) which | D) as |
| 13. A) attributes | B) contributes | C) dedicates | D) refers |
| 14. A) near | B) later | C) latter | D) recent |
| 15. A) established | B) built | C) formed | D) set |
| 16. A) reason | B) effect | C) cause | D) course |
| 17. A) designs | B) shapes | C) forms | D) patterns |
| 18. A) phenomena | B) phenomenons | C) phenomenon | D) phenomenon's |
| 19. A) besides | B) except for | C) apart from | D) except |
| 20. A) damage | B) injury | C) harm | D) ruins |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Global warming may or may not be the great environmental crisis of the 21st century, but—regardless of whether it is or isn't—we won't do much about it. We will argue over it and may even, as a nation, make some fairly solemn-sounding commitments to avoid it. But the more dramatic and meaningful these commitments seem, the less likely they are to be observed.

Al Gore calls global warming an “inconvenient truth,” as if merely recognizing it could put us on a path to a solution. But the real truth is that we don't know enough to relieve global warming, and—without major technological breakthroughs—we can't do much about it.

From 2003 to 2050, the world's population is projected to grow from 6.4 billion to 9.1 billion, a 42% increase. If energy use per person and technology remain the same, total energy use and greenhouse gas emissions (mainly, CO₂) will be 42% higher in 2050. But that's too low, because societies that grow richer use more energy. We need economic growth unless we condemn the world's poor to their present poverty and freeze everyone else's living standards. With modest growth, energy use and greenhouse emissions will more than double by 2050.

No government will adopt rigid restrictions on economic growth and personal freedom (limits on electricity usage, driving and travel) that might cut back global warming. Still, politicians want to show they're “doing something.” Consider the *Kyoto Protocol* (京都议定书). It allowed countries that joined to punish those that didn't. But it hasn't reduced CO₂ emissions (up about 25% since 1990), and many signatories (签字国) didn't adopt tough enough policies to hit their 2008 — 2012 targets.

The practical conclusion is that if global warming is a potential disaster, the only solution is new technology. Only an aggressive research and development program might find ways of breaking our dependence on fossil fuels or dealing with it.

The trouble with the global warming debate is that it has become a moral problem when it's really an engineering one. The inconvenient truth is that if we don't solve the engineering problem, we're helpless.

1. What is said about global warming in the first paragraph?
 - A) It may not prove an environmental crisis at all.
 - B) It is an issue requiring world wide commitments.
 - C) Serious steps have been taken to avoid or stop it.
 - D) Very little will be done to bring it under control.
2. According to the author's understanding, what is Al Gore's view on global warming?
 - A) It is a reality both people and politicians are unaware of.
 - B) It is a phenomenon that causes us many inconveniences.
 - C) It is a problem that can be solved once it is recognized.
 - D) It is an area we actually have little knowledge about.
3. Greenhouse emissions will more than double by 2050 because of _____.
 - A) economic growth
 - B) wasteful use of energy
 - C) The widening gap between the rich and poor
 - D) the rapid advances of science and technology
4. The author believes that, since the signing of the Kyoto Protocol, _____.
 - A) politicians have started to do something to better the situation
 - B) few nations have adopted real tough measures to limit energy use
 - C) reductions in energy consumption have greatly cut back global warming
 - D) international cooperation has contributed to solving environmental problems
5. What is the message the author intends to convey?
 - A) Global warming is more of a moral issue than a practical one.
 - B) The ultimate solution to global warming lies in new technology.
 - C) The debate over global warming will lead to technological breakthroughs.
 - D) People have to give up certain material comforts to stop global warming.

Section C



虚拟语气（一）

一、概念

虚拟语气是一种动词形式，表示一种愿望、假设、怀疑、猜测、建议等含义，表示的含义不是客观存在的事实，与事实相反。

二、虚拟语气的用法（一）

1. 虚拟语气用在条件状语从句中

在条件状语从句中，表示与事实相反的句子有三种态。一是与现在事实相反，二是与将来事实相反，三是与过去事实相反，具体如表 7.1 所示。

表 7.1 条件状语从句中的虚拟语气

时态	if 引导的条件句	主句
与现在事实相反	动词过去式（动词 be 的过去式一般用 were）	would (should/ could/ might) + 动词原形
与将来事实相反	动词过去式 或 should + 动词原形 或 were to + 动词原形	would (should/ could/ might) + 动词原形
与过去事实相反	过去完成时	would (should/ could/ might) have + 过去分词

1) 与现在事实相反

If I were you, I should buy it. 如果我是你，我就买了它。

If I had time, I would study French. 如果我有时间，我会学习法语的。

If she knew English, she would not ask me for help. 如果她懂英语的话，不会找我帮忙的。

2) 与将来事实相反

If it were fine tomorrow, I would go shopping. 如果明天天气好，我就去买东西。

If he were to come tomorrow, he would help you. 如果他明天来，他会帮助你的。

3) 与过去事实相反

If you had got up earlier, you could have caught the train. 如果你早一点起床，就会赶上火车的。

If you had studied hard, you could have passed the exam. 如果你学习努力的话，你会通过考试的。

2. 虚拟语气用在宾语从句中

在表示建议、要求、决定或命令等动词后如 suggest, advise, propose, insist, demand, desire, request, require, decide, order, command 等引导的宾语从句中，要用虚拟语气，其谓语动词形式为 should + 动词原形，其中 should 可以省略，主句中的时态不限。例如

We proposed that the medicine (should) be cleaned again. 我们提出把那台机器再清洗一次。

The captain ordered that we (should) leave the village before daybreak. 上尉下令叫我们在天亮前离开村庄。

The students requested that the teacher sing a song at the party. 学生们要求老师在聚会上唱一支歌。

The workers demanded that their pay (should) be raised. 工人们要求增加工资。

3. 虚拟语气中 wish 的用法

在动词 wish 后面的宾语从句中, 表示不可能实现的愿望。

1) 表示现在不可能实现的愿望时, 谓语动词用过去式(动词 be 的过去式用 were)。

I wish it were spring all the year round. 要是一年到头都是春天该多好啊!

I wish I could help you. 但愿我能帮助你。

2) 如表示过去未能实现的愿望时, 谓语动词就用过去完成式(had + 过去分词)。

She wishes she had been here last week. 她想要是她上星期在这里就好了。

3) 表示与将来事实可能相反的愿望时, 谓语动词一般用 would + 动词原形。

I wish you would be more careful in future. 希望你今后会更小心一些才好。

4. 虚拟语气中 would rather/sooner (宁愿), would prefer 的用法

在 would rather/sooner (宁愿), would prefer (希望) 后面的宾语从句中, 表示与现在事实或将来相反的愿望时, 谓语动词用过去式; 表示过去未能实现的愿望时, 谓语动词就用过去完成式。

I would rather he came next Saturday. 我宁愿他下星期六来。

I would prefer he hadn't stayed there too long. 我倒希望他在那里不要逗留时间过长。

5. 虚拟语气用在主语从句中

1) 在句型 "It is important (necessary, strange, impossible, natural) that..." 中, that 后面的从句中的谓语动词用 should + 动词原形。

It's necessary that we should have a walk now. 我们有必要出去散散步。

It's natural that she should do so. 她这样做是很自然的。

2) 在句型 "It is a pity (a shame, better) that" 中, that 后面的从句中的谓语动词用 should + 动词原形。

It was a great pity that you (should) have made so many mistakes in your math exercise. 太遗憾了, 你居然在数学练习中犯了那么多错误。

It will be better that she stay with her grandmother. 她和她的祖母在一起就好了。

3) 在句型 "It is suggested (requested, proposed, ordered) that" 中, that 后面的从句中的谓语动词用 should + 动词原形。

It was suggested that the sports meeting be put off until next Saturday. 大家建议把运动会推迟到下星期六。

It is desired that we (should) get everything ready by tonight. 希望我们到今晚将一切准备就绪。

Unit Eight TRAVEL

Section A



TEXT



Paris, France

Paris, lovely, green romantic Paris, a city of contrasts—I fell in love with her as so many others have before me. Magnificent modern buildings were everywhere, but in between them stood tiny ancient shops and apartments. As long as I live, I'll remember my first night in Paris when I stood on Montmartre, the highest hill in the city, the lights of Paris spread in a panorama below while the cool autumn breeze whispered through the trees. I could not believe I was really there!

The next morning, we enjoyed a tour of Paris, which is just as beautiful by day as by night. The tree-lined streets were spotless, for each morning, water from the River Seine flows from drains onto the streets where shopkeepers with long reed brooms sweep the streets clean. We drove past many famous restaurants, shops and apartment houses. At the end of the most famous street in Paris, the Champs Elysee, stood the golden Arch of Triumph through which the Allies in World War II marched after driving defeated Germans from the city.

As we walked through the grounds around Notre Dame, I gazed above me at imposing Gothic towers silhouetted like giant sentinels against the gray sky. From the top of the Cathedral wall rain spouts jutted about every twelve feet, each spout made in the face of an animal, the rain pouring from its mouth.

Inside the Cathedral, exquisite, elegant rosette stained glass windows gleamed from a sudden burst of sunlight forcing its way through the clouds as though heaven had opened long enough to light them for us. One of the windows had been badly damaged during World War II. All the colors in the replacement glass perfectly match the undamaged window except blue; the formula for this shade of blue had been lost and could not be duplicated no matter how hard the artists tried. To my untrained eye, it was undetected.

The Eiffel Tower, an extraordinary edifice made of interlocking steel girders soared into the sky, glittering brightly in the sunlight. The Eiffel Tower, a skeleton iron tower, is 934 feet high, built as a feature of the World's Fair held in Paris in 1889. The lower section consists of four arched

columns, each providing a supporting base 330 feet square. The columns curve toward each other until they unite in a single column 620 feet above the ground. Platforms are at the 189 feet, the 380 feet and 906 feet levels on the first level is a restaurant. Each platform has its own observation deck. The Eiffel Tower plays an important part in scientific research, first being utilized as a radio broadcasting station. Searchlights are mounted near the top as are a meteorological observatory and physical and biological laboratories.

We rode in an elevator as far as it could go toward the top of the Eiffel Tower and climbed narrow metal steps the rest of the way to a platform high in the sky. We could see the whole city of Paris from there—a most breathtaking sight.



QUESTIONS

1. Did the author start his travel from England? How can you know that?
2. What is the author's attitude toward Paris?
3. Where is the Arch of Triumph located?
4. What's the inside of the Notre Dame like?
5. When and for what was the Eiffel Tower built?



NEW WORDS

magnificent [mæg'nɪfɪsnt]	a.	壮丽的; 宏伟的
panorama [ˌpænərə'mɜː]	n.	全景
drain [dreɪn]	n.	地下水道
reed [riːd]	n.	芦苇
imposing [ɪm'pɜːzi]	a.	庄严的
Gothic ['gɒθɪk]	a.	哥特式的
silhouette [ˌsɪluːet]	v.	具有……的轮廓; 为……的侧影
sentinel ['sentɪnəl]	n.	哨兵
cathedral [kə'tiːdrəl]	n.	大教堂
jut [dʒʊt]	v.	突出
exquisite ['ekskwɪzɪt]	a.	精致的
elegant ['elɪɡənt]	a.	雅致的, 优美的
rosette [rɒ'zet]	n.	(建筑) 圆花窗, 圆花饰
stain [steɪn]	v.	(给木料、玻璃等) 染色, 着色
gleam [ɡliːm]	v.	闪闪发光
match [mætʃ]	v.	匹配
formula ['fɒmjulə]	n.	配方
duplicate ['dʒuːplɪkɪt]	v.	复制
undetected [ˌʌndɪ'tektɪd]	a.	未被发现的, 未被觉察的
edifice [ɛdɪfɪs]	n.	大厦, 建筑物
interlocking [ɪntɜː'lɒkɪŋ]	a.	交织在一起的

girder ['gɜ:dʒ]	<i>n.</i>	(大)梁
glitter ['glɪtɜ]	<i>v.</i>	闪闪发光
skeleton ['skelɪtɜn]	<i>n.</i>	骨骼, 骨架;
	<i>a.</i>	梗概的, 轮廓的
arched [1:tʃt]	<i>a.</i>	拱的; 拱形的
utilize ['ju:taɪz]	<i>v.</i>	利用
searchlight ['sɜ:tʃ.laɪt]	<i>n.</i>	探照灯
mount [maunt]	<i>v.</i>	安装
meteorological [;mi:tiɜrɜ'lɜd=ɪkl]	<i>a.</i>	气象的
observatory [3bɜzɜ:vɜtɜri]	<i>n.</i>	天文台; 气象台
biological [baɪɜlɜd=ɪkɜl]	<i>a.</i>	生物的
breathtaking [;bre0əteɪki9]	<i>a.</i>	令人赞叹的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

rain spout	出水槽
fall in love with	爱上
gaze at	盯住, 凝视
a burst of	突然一阵
soar into the sky	飞上高空
consist of	包含, 由……组成
play an important part in	发挥重要作用



PROPER NAME

Montamarte	蒙马特高地
the River Seine	塞纳河
the Champs Elysee	香榭丽舍大街
the Arch of Triumph	凯旋门
the Allies	盟军
Notre Dame	巴黎圣母院
the Eiffel Tower	艾菲尔铁塔
the World's Fair	世界博览会



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- After watching the English Channel slip by, France appeared, the land carved into squares of green and brown. 在飞掠过英吉利海峡后, 法兰西的国土出现了, 她的土地呈现出一块块的绿色和咖啡色。
the land carved into squares of green and brown 为独立主格结构作状语表示伴随状态。
- At the end of the most famous street in Paris, the Champs Elysee, stood the golden Arch of Triumph through which the Allies in World War II marched after driving defeated

Germans from the city. 金色的凯旋门耸立在巴黎最富盛名的香榭丽舍大街的一端。
第二次世界大战中，盟军将德军赶出巴黎后曾列队穿过凯旋门。

状语 “At the end of the most famous street in Paris, the Champs Elysee” 前置引起倒装。

3. Inside the Cathedral, exquisite, elegant rosette stained glass windows gleamed from a sudden burst of sunlight forcing its way through the clouds as though heaven had opened long enough to light them for us. 教堂里面，精巧别致的圆花玻璃在破云而出的阳光照耀下闪闪发光，好像天空早已为我们裂开缝隙照亮了它们。

as though 好像……似的，仿佛……似的

4. The formula for this shade of blue had been lost and could not be duplicated no matter how hard the artists tried. 这种蓝色的配方已经遗失，无论艺术家们怎么费尽心思，也无法将其复制出来。

no matter how 引导让步状语从句，意为“不论怎样”。

5. The Eiffel Tower, an extraordinary edifice made of interlocking steel girders soared into the sky, glittering brightly in the sunlight. 艾菲尔铁塔是一座由钢铁大梁交织构建而成的宏伟建筑，它高耸入云，在阳光下金光四射。

glittering brightly in the sunlight 现在分词作状语。

6. We rode in an elevator as far as it could go toward the top of the Eiffel Tower and climbed narrow metal steps the rest of the way to a platform high in the sky. 承载着我们的电梯到达了艾菲尔铁塔的最高点，接着我们攀登者窄窄的铁台阶走完了剩下的路程，到达了高入云天的平台。

as far as 直到……程度，就……而论



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

positive	imposing	opportunity	benefit	exquisite
undetected	elegant	stain	utilize	breathtaking

- In order to _____ land more fully, they adopted close planting.
- Showoffs never miss a / an _____ to draw attention to themselves by some outrageous novelty.
- Many children and adolescents have high blood pressure that is going _____, a study has shown.
- The skyline is dull compared to the _____ glass skyscrapers of Hong Kong.
- The little boy _____ his fingers with ink.

6. The Summer Resort has a simple and _____ layout.
7. We saw the most _____ fields of lavender there.
8. The image of Karen, her _____ beauty, warm smile and gentle voice, stayed with Nim through the remainder of the drive downtown.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

as usual	come into view
fall in love (with)	gaze at
leave behind	get rid of
a burst of	play an important role in
consist of	in any case

1. For some time, she _____ a pair of fur-lined high boots on display.
2. Substances _____ small particles called molecules.
3. As will be shown below, labor unions can _____ in shaping supply and even demand.
4. Upon his appearance there was _____ applause.
5. On the far side of the hills, the dark sand dunes _____.
6. Others say it is possible to _____ more than once and even be in love with more than one person at the same time.
7. If you ask the fast runner to set the pace, then most of them _____.
8. We have an extractor fan in the kitchen to _____ the smell of cooking.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following five sentences.

1. _____ you must arrive there on time. (无论如何你必须按时到达那里。)
2. The destroyer's armament _____ several small cannon, two torpedo tube and a number of anti-craft guns. (驱逐舰上的武器装备包括几门小口径大炮, 两个鱼雷发射管与数门高射炮。)
3. The climbers stood on top of the mountain, _____ the splendid view. (登山者站在山顶, 凝视着美景。)
4. A saying circulated among serfs, "All a serf can _____ is his own shadow, and all he can _____ is his footprints." (农奴中流传着这样的话: “能带走的只是自己的身影, 能留下的只有自己的脚印。”)

5. When does the new timetable _____? (新的时刻表什么时候实行?)

Section B

TEXT



Suzhou: City of Gardens

China's classical gardens are divided into two systems: the north and south. The northern system is represented by the imperial gardens in Beijing while the southern system has 3 schools: south of the Yangtze River, south of the Five Ridges and Central Sichuan. The most representative among the gardens south of the Yangtze River are Suzhou's private gardens.

There are more than 1,000 Suzhou gardens recorded in the history books. Pijiang Garden in the Eastern Jin Dynasty (317—420) is the earliest recorded private garden. Nowadays, Suzhou has dozens of well-preserved gardens. Its Garden of the Humble Administrator (Zhuo Zheng Yuan) and Linger-Here Garden (Liu Yuan) are among China's four renowned gardens. With so many classical gardens, Suzhou is entitled "China's City of Gardens".

Suzhou has some exceptional advantages to be a city of gardens. The first advantage is related to geography. Lakes, rivers and canals are scattered everywhere. The climate is mild and the soil fertile which is good for the growth of flowers and trees. Furthermore, the place abounds with lake stones, a necessary material for the decoration of gardens.

The second factor is its developed economy. As early as 2,000 years ago, Suzhou became the capital of Wu, a state of the Zhou Dynasty, and remained the agricultural, industrial and commercial center. It played a key role in the national economy especially in the Ming (1368—1644) and Qing (1644—1911) dynasties. According to historical records its feudal land tax accounted for one tenth in the Ming Dynasty. The beautiful scenery and rich material life made Suzhou "a paradise on earth". High officials, noble lords, rich merchants, gentlemen and people of literature and writing all gathered here. Most of them were wealthy and spent a lot of money building mansions and gardens.

The third advantage is developed culture, a strong academic atmosphere and numerous people of talent. According to *Statistics of Metropolitan Graduates* written by Zhang Yaoxiang of the Qing Dynasty, 10.6 percent of the total national graduates were from Suzhou. The four most outstanding painters of the Ming Dynasty—Shen Zhou, Wen Zhengming, Tang Yin and Qiu Ying were all Suzhou people. Suzhou also had some landscape architects. One representative was Ji Cheng of the Ming Dynasty, who wrote the first book in China's history on landscape architecture. Such talents were produced in large numbers. They had profound learning, mastered landscape architecture, created quite a few models of classical gardens and bequeathed a valuable legacy to

Suzhou and mankind.



QUESTIONS

Decide true (T) or false (F) of the following statements according to the text.

1. The most representative among the gardens south of the Five Ridges are Suzhou's private gardens. ()
2. Pijiang Garden in the Eastern Jin Dynasty is the earliest private garden in Chinese history. ()
3. The beautiful scenery and rich material life made Suzhou "a paradise on earth". ()
4. The four most outstanding painters of the Qing Dynasty—Shen Zhou, Wen Zhengming, Tang Yin and Qiu Ying were all Suzhou people. ()
5. Ji Cheng of the Ming Dynasty wrote the first book in China's history on landscape architecture. ()



NEW WORDS

represent [ˌreprɪəzənt]	v. 代表
imperial [ɪmˈpiəriəl]	a. 皇帝的; 至高无上的
ridge [rɪdʒ]	n. 山脊, 山脉
representative [ˌreprɪəzəntətɪv]	a. 典型的, 有代表性的
well-preserved	a. 保存得很好的
renowned [rɪˈnaʊnd]	a. 著名的, 有声望的
entitle [ɪnˈtaɪl]	v. 称做……; 定名为……; 给……称号
exceptional [ɪkˈsepʃənəl]	a. 例外的, 异常的; 优越的
canal [kəˈnæl]	n. 运河
scatter [ˈskætər]	v. 散布, 撒播
fertile [ˈfɜːtaɪl]	a. 肥沃的, 富饶的
furthermore [ˌfɜːðəˈmɔː]	ad. 此外, 而且
abound [əˈbaʊnd]	v. 富于, 充满
decoration [ˌdekəˈreɪʃən]	n. 装饰, 装饰品
commercial [kəˈmɜːʃəl]	a. 商业的
feudal [ˈfjuːdl]	a. 封建制度的, 封建时代的; 领地的; 世仇的
paradise [ˈpærɪdaɪs]	n. 天堂
noble [ˈnəʊbl]	a. 高尚的; 贵族的
mansion [ˈmænsən]	n. 大厦; 宅邸
academic [ˌækəˈdemɪk]	a. 学术的; 学院的
atmosphere [ˈætmosfɪə]	n. 气氛; 大气
metropolitan [ˌmetrəˈpɒlɪtən]	a. 大都市的
outstanding [aʊtˈstændɪŋ]	a. 杰出的; 显著的
architect [ˈɑːkɪtekt]	n. 建筑师; 设计者

architecture ['1:kitektʃ]	<i>n.</i>	建筑学; 建筑风格; 建筑式样
profound [prɜːfaund]	<i>a.</i>	深厚的; 意义深远的; 渊博的
bequeath [bi'kwɪ:ð]	<i>v.</i>	遗赠; 把……遗赠给; 把……传下去
legacy [ə'leg3si]	<i>n.</i>	遗赠, 遗产



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

divide into	把……分成
dozens of	几十; 许多
be related to	与……有关
abound with / in	充满; 有大量某物
play a key role in	在……中起关键作用
account for	占; 说明, 解释
quite a few	不少, 相当多
bequeath sth. to sb.	将 (财物等) 遗赠给某人



PROPER NAME

the Yangtze River	长江
the Five Ridges	五岭
Central Sichuan	四川中部
Pijiang Garden	郛江园林
the Eastern Jin Dynasty	东晋时代
Garden of the Humble Administrator	拙政园 (Zhuo Zheng Yuan)
Linger-Here Garden	留园 (Liu Yuan)
China's City of Gardens	中国园林之城
the Zhou Dynasty	周朝
the Ming Dynasty	明朝
the Qing Dynasty	清朝
Statistics of Metropolitan Graduates	《都市仕林统鉴》



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- The northern system is represented by the imperial gardens in Beijing while the southern system has 3 schools: south of the Yangtze River, south of the Five Ridges and Central Sichuan. 北方风格以北京的皇家园林为代表, 南方风格又有三个流派: 长江以南、五岭以南和四川中部。
the imperial gardens 皇家园林
school 此处译为“流派”
- The most representative among the gardens south of the Yangtze River are Suzhou's private gardens. 在长江以南的园林中最具代表性的是苏州的私家园林。
Suzhou's private gardens 苏州的私家园林
- Furthermore, the place abounds with lake stones, a necessary material for the decoration of

gardens. 而且, 此处有着丰富的湖石, 这是园林装饰的必备之物。

a necessary material for the decoration of gardens 为 lake stones 的同位语。

4. As early as 2,000 years ago, Suzhou became the capital of Wu, a state of the Zhou Dynasty, and remained the agricultural, industrial and commercial center. 早在 2000 年前的周朝, 苏州就成为吴国的都城, 并成为农业、工业和商业中心。
5. According to historical records its feudal land tax accounted for one tenth in the Ming Dynasty. 根据历史记载, 苏州缴纳的封建地租占了明朝的十分之一。
feudal land tax 封建地租
one tenth 十分之一, 但是三分之二为 two thirds。
6. According to *Statistics of Metropolitan Graduates* written by Zhang Yaoxiang of the Qing Dynasty, 10.6 percent of the total national graduates were from Suzhou. 根据清代张耀祥的《都市仕林统鉴》, 全国 10.6% 的举人来自苏州。
7. The four most outstanding painters of the Ming Dynasty—Shen Zhou, Wen Zhengming, Tang Yin and Qiu Ying were all Suzhou people. 明代最有名的四个画家——沈周、文征明、唐寅和仇英都是苏州人。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

represent	divide	renowned	academic	profound
entitle	commercial	fertile	scatter	decoration

1. The birds _____ at the sound of the gun.
2. The talented artist carved an interesting _____ from this piece of tree root.
3. "Life is a journey", as one of the _____ philosophers once said.
4. The teacher _____ the class and took one section to the library and left the other to write an article.
5. Their age and experience _____ old people to the respect of young people.
6. This painting _____ the end of the world.
7. Although the sentence is short, but contains a _____ truth of life.
8. Seine River and its branches form the chief _____ waterway of France.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

quite a few	according to
be related to	abound with
break out	play a key role in
divide into	account for
lean on	pay attention to

1. She claims that she _____ the Queen.
2. Charities _____ disaster relief, and the government has adopted measures to support their development.
3. The latest surveys show that _____ children have unpleasant associations with homework.
4. Satan, like a fisher, baits his hook _____ the appetite of the fish.
5. The large artificial lakes _____ bird and wildlife.
6. He'll have to _____ where every cent goes.
7. He does not _____ anybody. You are wasting your time in persuading him.
8. Should another world war _____, what would become of human beings?



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following five sentences.

1. Jack could not _____ his foolish mistake. (杰克无法解释自己的愚蠢错误。)
2. In many communities insects _____ as herbivores and predators. (在许多群落中，昆虫作为植食动物和捕食者起着重要的作用。)
3. She always _____ her parents for help when she is in difficulties. (她手头拮据时总是靠父母帮助。)
4. Usually the political system can _____ the cabinet system and the presidential system. (通常政治制度可分为两种：内阁制和总统制。)
5. Poems and essays alike _____ neat turns of phrase, and epigrams that are immediately pleasing. (诗文中充满了简洁的短语和读来清晰可喜的短句。)



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

After living and working for some time in a big city, citydwellers find it relaxing to go on a trip. The most economical and convenient way is 1 a package tour (团体旅游). The guide takes care of 2. The members of the package tour have 3 the guide and enjoy the sights. 4 quite a number of tourists 5 taking advantage of this modern convenience. Reasons? First, personal habits differ 6. Some are early-risers. They are found out of door at daybreak. But 7 are sleep-laters. Then, the guide is only doing his 8, not helping the tourists to enjoy a holiday. He

suggests the day's plan and then starts 9 his "guests" through the historic spots with great precision. 10 the day, the "guests" are, with the exception of a few strong young men, 11. Last but not the least is the way the meals 12. The package tour is notorious for 13 strangers to eat not only at the same table but also 14. Some less aggressive 15 are usually surprised to find the dishes 16 before they even start eating. They often 17 two-thirds of their rice untouched. At the end of the day, they are hungry and 18. However, considering all the annoying 19, queuing up for meals, waiting 20 to get into a famous spot—isn't this still the only ideal way to take a trip?

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A) to get | B) taking | C) to join | D) making |
| 2. A) anything | B) something | C) things | D) everything |
| 3. A) to listen | | B) only to listen to | |
| | C) just to listen in | D) no way but listen for | |
| 4. A) Therefore | B) Thus | C) But | D) Consequently |
| 5. A) have stopped | B) have refused | C) have suggested | D) are against |
| 6. A) from person to person | | B) between each person | |
| | C) from a person and another | D) numerously | |
| 7. A) the rests | B) the other | C) fewer | D) others |
| 8. A) own picture taken | B) job | C) explanation | D) own sightseeing |
| 9. A) passing | B) leading | C) working | D) entertaining |
| 10. A) At the end of | B) In the end of | C) On the end of | D) To the end of |
| 11. A) happy | B) excited | C) worried | D) exhausted |
| 12. A) serving | B) served | C) have to be served | D) are served |
| 13. A) forcing | B) convincing | C) making | D) helping |
| 14. A) quickly | B) cleanly | C) in a same way | D) at the same speed |
| 15. A) people | B) guides | C) hosts and guests | D) guides and tourists |
| 16. A) broken | B) delicious | C) empty | D) cooked |
| 17. A) leave | B) have left | C) are leaving | D) have been left |
| 18. A) ill | B) excited | C) homesick | D) depressed |
| 19. A) guides | B) other tourists | C) sightseeings | D) inconveniences |
| 20. A) long | B) for long hours | C) too long | D) unlimitedly |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

When Mike Kelly first set out to build his own private space-ferry service, he figures his **bread-and-butter business** would be lofting satellite into high earth orbit. Now he thinks he may have figured wrong. "People were always asking me when they could go," says Kelly, who runs Kelly Space Technology, "I realized the real market is in space tourism."

According to preliminary market surveys, there are 10,000 would-be space tourists willing to spend \$1 million each to visit the final frontier. Space Adventures in Arlington have taken more than 130 deposits for a two-hour, \$98,000 space tour tentatively set to occur by 2005. This may sound great,

but there are a few hurdles. Putting a simple satellite into orbit — with no oxygen, life support or return trip necessary—already costs an astronomical \$2,200/kg. And that doesn't include the cost of insuring rich and possibly litigious (爱打官司的) passengers. The entire group of entrepreneurs trying to corner the spaceturism market has between them “just enough money to blow up one rocket”.

The U.S. space agency has plenty of money but zero interest in making space less expensive for the little guys. So the little guys are racing to do what the government has failed to do: design a reusable launch system that's inexpensive, safe and reliable. Kelly Space's prototype looks like a plane that has sprouted rocket engines. Rotary Rocket in California has a booster with rotors to make a helicopter-style return to earth. The first passenger countdowns are still years away, but bureaucrats at the Federal Aviation Administration in Washington are already informally discussing flight regulations. After all, you can't be too prepared for a trip to that galaxy far, far away.

1. Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
A) Take Vacations in Space B) Building Hotels in Space
C) Flight Regulations in Space Travels D) Cost of Space Traveling
2. The phrase “bread-and-butter business” (Line 2, Para.1) most probably means _____.
A) a business to sell bread and butter B) a business to produce bread and butter
C) the business to make a living D) a traveling agency
3. How much is the 2-hour space tour for each person according to Space Adventures in Arlington?
A) \$1 million. B) \$10,000. C) \$98,000. D) \$22,000.
4. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
A) The biggest hurdle for the space-tourism project is lack of a life supporting system.
B) The entrepreneurs trying to explore the space-tourism have plenty of money.
C) The government has little interests in this project.
D) The first passenger countdowns are within a few years.
5. What's the author's tone in the last sentence of the passage?
A) Objective. B) Ironical. C) Approving. D) Enthusiastic.

Section C



虚拟语气 (二)

三、虚拟语气的用法 (二)

6. 虚拟语气用于表语从句中

由 suggestion, order, advice, desire, idea, request, proposal 等名词作主语的句子里, 其表语

从句用虚拟语气表示建议、命令或要求等。从句中的谓语动词形式为 **should + 动词原形**，其中 **should** 可以省略。

My advice is that more trees (should) be planted around the village. 我的建议是在村庄周围多种些树。

Their proposal is that we should set up a spare time school for them. 他们的提议是要我们为他们成立一所业余学校。

7. 虚拟语气用于同位语从句中

作名词 **suggestion, order, proposal, idea, plan** 等的同位语从句中用虚拟语气，其谓语动词的形式为 **should + 动词原形**，其中 **should** 可以省略。例如

We all agreed to his suggestion that we (should) go to Beijing for sightseeing. 我们都同意他的意见，去北京观光。

What do you think of the idea that we should begin the experiment? 你认为我们立即开始实验的意见怎么样？

总结：只要涉及建议、要求、渴望等一些词，如 **suggest, advise, propose, insist, demand, desire, request, require, decide, order, command**，就要用虚拟语气。

8. 虚拟语气用在由 **as if** 或 **as though** 引导的状语从句或表语从句中

She loves the child as if he were her own. 她爱孩子好像他是她自己的。

She feels as if/as though she were in danger. 她感到好像处于危险中。

9. 虚拟语气用在 **It is time that** 句型中，谓语动词用一般过去式。

It is time we went to bed. 到上床的时间了。

It is about time you began your work. 到你开始工作的时间了。

10. 虚拟语气用在由 **even if** 或 **even though**（即使）引导的状语从句或表语从句中

Even if he came, we should not finish the work on time. 他即使来了，我们也完不成工作。

注意：

1) 如果 **if** 从句所指的事很有可能发生，那么这是真实条件句；反之则是虚拟条件句。

If you study hard, you will surely pass the examination. （真实条件句）

If I were a bird, I could fly freely in the sky. （虚拟条件句）

2) 有时 **if** 引导的状语从句可以省略 **if**，而把从句中的动词 **were, had** 或 **should** 移到主语前面，**did** 和 **would, should** 也可以提前。

Had he known her address, he would have gone to visit her. 如果他知道她的地址，他会去看她的。

Did time permit, we might go there. 如果时间允许，我们可以去那里。

3) 虚拟语气中，条件从句的动词动作可以和主句的动词动作时态不一致。

If they had studied hard, they could do it easily now. 如果他们以前努力学习的话，现在干得就会容易些。

If he had not taken my advice, he wouldn't do it much better like this. 如果他不听取我的建议，他就不会干得这样好。



Grammar Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. The teacher demanded that the exam _____ before eleven.
A) must finish B) would be finished C) be finished D) must be finished
2. She made the demand that the journalists _____ at once _____ Iraq.
A) leave; for B) leave; to C) left; to D) to be left; for
3. He is talking so much about America as if he _____ there.
A) had been B) has been C) was D) has gone
4. The young man insisted that he _____ nothing wrong and _____ free.
A) did; set B) had done; should be set
C) should do; be set D) had done; must be set
5. I suggested there _____ be a kind of language all could understand and use _____.
A) can; it B) /; / C) would; it D) may; /
6. The suggestion has been made _____ the basketball game _____ put off.
A) for; to B) that; be C) which; should be D) to; being
7. The order came that the medical supplies _____ to Beijing for the SARS soon.
A) would be sent B) should send C) be sent D) must be sent
8. It is important that we _____ wild animals.
A) will protect B) should protect C) shall protect D) are protecting
9. Had you listened to the doctor, you _____ all right now.
A) are B) were C) would be D) would have been
10. _____ any change about the date, please tell me immediately.
A) Will there be B) Should there be C) There will be D) There should be
11. _____ today, he would get there by Friday.
A) Would he leave B) Was he leaving C) Were he to leave D) If he leave
12. Should it rain, the crops _____.
A) would be saved B) would have been saved C) will be saved D) had been saved
13. You _____ come earlier. The bus left a moment ago.
A) would B) should have C) may D) have
14. He treated me as though/as if _____ his own son.
A) I am B) I would be C) I was D) I were
15. I _____ you some money, but I hadn't any on me then.
A) would lend B) would have lent C) could lend D) may have lent
16. A few minutes earlier and we _____ the rain.
A) have caught B) had caught C) could have caught D) were to catch
17. "Have you ever been to Beijing?"

"No, but I wish I _____"

- A) have B) will C) do D) had

18. I'm glad I went over all my notes; otherwise _____ .

- A) I may have failed B) I'd fail C) I'd have failed D) I'll have failed

19. "What will you do during the summer holiday?"

"I don't know, but it's high time _____ something."

- A) I'm deciding B) I'll decide C) I decided D) I decide

20. What should we do if it _____ tomorrow?

- A) should snow B) would snow C) snow D) will snow

21. If only I _____ my watch!

- A) hadn't lost B) haven't lost C) didn't lost D) don't lose

22. You _____ such a serious mistake if you had followed his advice.

- A) may not make B) might not make
C) shouldn't have made D) might not have made

23. We _____ the work on time without your help.

- A) hadn't had finished B) didn't have finished
C) couldn't have finished D) can't have finished

24. "Where have you been?"

"I got caught in traffic; otherwise _____ sooner."

- A) I would be here B) I have been here
C) I had been here D) I would have been here

25. If it were not for the fact that you _____ ill, I would ask you to do this right now.

- A) were B) had been C) are D) should be

Unit Nine FOOD & DRINK

Section A



Our Changing Diet

What do most Americans and Canadians usually eat? Many people think that the typical North American diet consists of fast food—hamburgers, hot dogs, French fries, pizza, fried chicken, and so on. They think Americans and Canadians also eat a lot of convenience foods, usually frozen or canned, and junk food—candy, cookies, potato chips, and other things without much nutritional value. Unfortunately, this description is not totally inaccurate. The American diet is generally high in sugar, salt, fat, and cholesterol, and these substances can cause health problems.

However, some people's eating habits are changing. They are becoming more interested in good health, and nutrition is an important part of health. North Americans are eating less red meat and fewer eggs, and they are eating more chicken and fish. Chicken and fish contain less fat than meat and eggs. Many people are also buying more fresh vegetables and eating them raw or cooked quickly in very little water in order to keep the vitamins.

Restaurant menus are also changing to reflect people's growing concern with good nutrition. The "typical" North American diet now includes food from many different countries. More ethnic restaurants are opening in big cities in the United States and Canada. Foods from China, Japan, Korea, Thailand, India and the Middle East are very popular. Even fast-food places now offer "lean" (low-fat) hamburgers, broiled or roasted (instead of fried) chicken, and salad bars with a wide variety of fresh fruits and vegetables.

How are we going to eat in the future? Because we now know about the importance of nutrition, we will probably continue to eat more fish and vegetables and less meat. We will still buy convenience foods in supermarkets, but frozen foods may be more nutritious and canned foods may have less salt and sugar. Our junk food will not be "junk" at all because instead of candy bars we will eat "nutrition bars" with a lot of vitamins and protein. In the future, our diet will probably be even more interesting and healthy than it is now.

In the United States and Canada, food is a very common topic of conversation. People are always discussing new dishes, restaurants, diet plans, and ideas about nutrition. The arguments about the best diets and foods will continue: Are vegetables better than a diet of cooked foods? Is a little alcohol good for relaxation, or is all alcohol harmful? Is some caffeine good for energy, or is caffeine always bad? Can yellow vegetables really prevent cancer? Will eating garlic help avoid heart attacks? One thing we do know for sure: The key to good nutrition is balance. How do we achieve that balance? We can choose foods from a variety of sources, control the quantities that we eat, limit fats, and exercise.



QUESTIONS

1. What are the traditional foods for North American?
2. Why do they change their eating habits?
3. What does the sentence mean when it says, "...junk food will not be 'junk'..."?
4. What is your opinion about the best diets and foods?



NEW WORDS

typical [ə'tɪpɪkəl]	a.	典型的
consist [kən'sɪst]	v.	由……组成
hamburger ['hæmbɜ:g]	n.	汉堡包
hot dog		热狗 (面包夹熏红肠)
pizza ['pi:tʒ]	n.	意大利肉饼, 比萨饼
fried chicken		炸鸡
convenience [kən'vi:njəns]	n.	方便
convenience food		方便食品
frozen [frɜ:zn]	a.	冻结的, 冷冰的
canned [kænd]	a.	罐装的, 听装的
junk food		垃圾食物
candy [kændi]	n.	糖果
cookie ['kuki]	n.	饼干
potato chip		炸马铃薯薄片
nutritional [nju:'triʃnl]	a.	营养的, 滋养的
inaccurate [ɪnə'ækjʊrɪt]	a.	不准确的, 不精确的
cholesterol [kɒl'lestʃrɜ:l]	n.	胆固醇
substance [sʌbstəns]	n.	物质
nutrition [nju:'triʃn]	n.	营养
red meat		红色肉类 (指羊肉、牛肉等)
contain [kən'teɪn]	v.	包含; 容纳; 装有
raw [rɔ:]	a.	未煮过的; 生的
vitamin ['vaɪtəmɪn]	n.	维生素
ethnic ['eθnɪk]	a.	种族的
Thailand ['taɪlənd]	n.	泰国

lean [li:n]	a.	瘦的; 肉(无脂肪的)
broiled [brɔɪld]	a.	烤过的
roasted ['rɔʊstɪd]	a.	烤好的
salad bars		色拉自助柜, 凉拌菜自助长条桌
protein ['prɒti:n]	n.	蛋白质
alcohol ['ælkəhɒl]	n.	含酒精的饮料
relaxation [ri:læksəʃn]	n.	放松, 松弛; 松懈
caffeine ['kæfi:n]	n.	咖啡碱, 咖啡因; (兴奋剂) 茶碱
garlic ['gɜ:lɪk]	n.	大蒜
balance ['bæləns]	n.	平衡; 收支平衡



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

consist of	由……组成, 由……构成
be interested in	对……感兴趣
in order to	为了……, 以便……
a (wide) variety of	种种, 各种各样的……
instead of	代替; 而不是
the key to	关键是, 要害是



PROPER NAME

the Middle East	中东
-----------------	----



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- Many people think that the typical North American diet consists of fast food—hamburgers, hot dogs, French fries, pizza, fried chicken, and so on. 许多人认为典型的北美饮食包括汉堡包、热狗、炸薯条、比萨饼、炸鸡等。
that 引导的是宾语从句。
- They are becoming more interested in good health, and nutrition is an important part of health. 他们对健康更为关注, 而且认为营养是健康的重要组成部分。
be interested in 对……感兴趣; have no interest for 对……没兴趣。
- Many people are also buying more fresh vegetables and eating them raw or cooked quickly in very little water in order to keep the vitamins. 许多人也购买更新鲜的蔬菜, 生吃或放在一点水里烹饪很短的时间, 以避免维生素的流失。
in order to 为了……, 以便……, 同 so as to。
- Restaurant menus are also changing to reflect people's growing concern with good nutrition. 餐馆菜单为反映人们对营养的日益关注也在发生变化。
be concerned with 与……有关; concern about 关心。
- How are we going to eat in the future? 将来我们应如何安排饮食?
in the future 将来; in future 从此以后, 同 from now on。
- Our junk food will not be “junk” at all because instead of candy bars we will eat “nutrition

bars” with a lot of vitamins and protein. 垃圾食品将不再是垃圾，因为我们将用富含维生素和蛋白质的“营养棒”代替“糖果棒”。

instead of 代替……，相当于 replace sth.，后接名词、代词、动名词或介词短语。

7. One thing we do know for sure: The key to good nutrition is balance. 我们可以肯定的是：平衡膳食是营养的关键。

do 表示强调。在实义动词前加上 do, does, did 表示强调。

8. We can choose foods from a variety of sources, control the quantities that we eat, limit fats, and exercise. 我们可以选择不同的食品，控制我们的饮食量，限制脂肪的摄入量，并且经常进行锻炼。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

relaxation	variety	species	frozen	alcohol
contain	balance	convenient	inaccurate	convenience

- The college library has a wide _____ of books.
- Of frozen fruits, the best-liked is the _____ pear which has a black, oily skin. Hard as an iron egg, the teeth will leave only a whitish mark on the skin when one tries to have a bite.
- The doctor told me to keep off _____.
- This book you lent me _____ a lot of information that I need.
- We would maintain the world _____ of power at all costs.
- In some cases, the criticism may indeed be _____.
- It is a great _____ to keep some good reference books in your study.
- Do yourself a favor and add more deliberate moments of _____ and deep rest into your day.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

consist of	be interested in
in order to	by means of
a (wide) variety of	instead of
the key to	for good
in charge of	out of control

- We should _____ acting as your sole agent.
- An experienced mechanic is _____ the job.
- Figure skating pairs perform _____ movements, including many complicated lifts.
- The atmosphere _____ more than 70% of nitrogen.

5. Taking exercise every day makes him look younger _____ older.
6. _____ attract readers, some journalists reported sham news.
7. Mastering basic English knowledge is _____ translating well.
8. The plane got _____ and crashed into the sea.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. Most people prefer _____, rather than the same job day in, day out. (与日复一日不变的工作相比, 大多数人更喜欢从事多种多样的工作。)
2. Public figures such as actors, politicians, and athletes should expect people to _____ their _____ lives. (公众人物, 例如演员、政治家和运动员应该预料到人们对他们私生活的关注。)
3. Their life _____ the humdrum activity of everyday existence. (他们的生活由日常生存的平凡活动所构成。)
4. We take cloth bags to the grocery store _____ paper or plastic grocery sacks. (去杂货店购物, 我们带着布袋, 而不使用杂货店的纸袋或是塑料袋。)
5. In this _____ society it is _____ to know how to sell yourself _____ get the job you want. (在这个竞争激烈的社会中, 为了得到你想要的工作, 知道如何自我推销是很重要的。)

Section B



TEXT

Human Needs



When we speak of basic human needs we mean something that is necessary to life, something that we cannot possibly do without. Food is a basic human need. Without it we would starve to death, but even if we have plenty of food, but of the wrong kind, our bodies will suffer from a lack of the right food. This is known as malnutrition.

In primitive countries, people want only the foods, which can be grown near their homes, whereas we eat foods which are often grown many thousands of miles away from our homes. Just think of the different types of meat we eat: beef, mutton, pork, chicken, turkey, goose, and rabbit. We could manage on a diet of one kind of meat, but how monotonous if we ate it everyday.

We can agree with primitive man that food is a basic need, but we differ from him in our food wants because of the wide variety of food we have available compared with him. Take fruit for example, not only can we enjoy the fruit grown in this country, but because of modern methods of

transport and food preservation, we can also enjoy the more exotic fruits from countries thousands of miles away, whereas primitive man is limited in his choice to the kinds of fruit which actually grows where he lives.



QUESTIONS

Decide true (T) or false (F) of the following statements according to the text.

1. Food is a basic human need and we cannot possibly do anything without food. ()
2. If our bodies suffer from a lack of the right food, it is called overnutrition. ()
3. Primitive people can also eat whatever food they want as modern people do. ()
4. We can enjoy more exotic fruits because of modern methods of transport and food preservation. ()
5. We can conclude from the text that we lead a much better life compared with primitive people. ()



NEW WORDS

starve [stɪ:v]	v.	饿死, 挨饿
suffer [əsʌfɜ]	v.	遭受, 忍受; 受痛苦
malnutrition [ˌmælnjuːtriʒn]	n.	营养失调, 营养不良
primitive [əˈprɪtɪv]	a.	原始的, 远古的
whereas [weɜrəæz]	conj.	然而
turkey ['tɜ:ki]	n.	火鸡
monotonous [mɒ'nɒtənəs]	a.	单调的; 无变化的
available [ə'veɪləbl]	a.	有效的, 可得的; 可利用的
transport [træns'pɔ:t]	n.	运输
preservation [ˌprezə'veɪʒn]	n.	保存, 保留
exotic [ɪg'zɒtɪk]	a.	异国的; 外来的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

speak of	谈到; 论及
starve to death	饿死
even if	即使; 虽然
suffer from	忍受, 遭受; 受……之苦
agree with	同意
differ from	与……不同; 区别于……
a variety of	种种; 各种各样的
compare with	与……相比较
take ... for example	以……为例



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. Without it we would starve to death, but even if we have plenty of food, but of the wrong kind, our bodies will suffer from a lack of the right food. This is known as malnutrition.

如果没有食物，我们就会饿死，即使有很多的食物，但如果对身体并不适合，我们的身体就会因为缺少适合的食物而遭罪，这就是人们所说的营养不良。

starve to death 饿死

even if 即使，相当于 even though。

2. We could manage on a diet of one kind of meat, but how monotonous if we ate it everyday.
当然，我们可以只吃一种肉，但如果每天都那样吃，是多么单调！

how 与形容词 monotonous 构成感叹句型。

3. We can agree with primitive man that food is a basic need, but we differ from him in our food wants because of the wide variety of food we have available compared with him.
我们同意，对于原始人而言食物是一种基本的人类需求。但是，从我们的饮食需求来说，我们与原始人不同，因为与他们相比我们有更多种类的食物可供选择。

want 此处为名词，意为“需要”。

4. Take fruit for example, not only can we enjoy the fruit grown in this country, but because of modern methods of transport and food preservation, we can also enjoy the more exotic fruits from countries thousands of miles away, whereas primitive man is limited in his choice to the kinds of fruit which actually grow where he lives. 以水果为例，我们不但可以享受本国种植的水果，同时，因为现代交通运输手段和食物保鲜技术的进步，我们还可以享受到更多从遥远的国度运来的奇珍异果。而原始人的选择只能局限在他们居住地所种植的水果上。

not only 置于句首句子要倒装。

whereas 前后两种不同状态构成鲜明对比，注意文章中的对比表达。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

available	preservation	exotic	suffer	primitive
transport	precise	starve	coordinate	severe

- We saw many _____ plants at the flower exhibition, which we had never seen before.
- Art emphasizes form and emotion, science emphasizes _____ and method.
- A special bus _____ the tourists from the airport to a hotel.
- They built a _____ shelter out of tree trunks.
- _____ and renewal of historic buildings, districts, and landscapes affirm the continuity and evolution of urban society.
- Of the three jobs _____, I chose this one because of the pay and the working condition.
- You must _____ the movements of your arms and legs when swimming.
- Some areas, due to their _____ weather conditions, are hardly populated.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

take for example	differ from
suffer from	compare with
agree with	a variety of
speak of	starve to death
make up one's mind	be absorbed in

1. It is estimated that one billion people in the world _____ hunger and malnutrition.
2. Do not _____ your happiness to one less fortunate than yourself.
3. Voltage can be measured using _____ methods.
4. Men _____ brutes (兽) in that they can think and speak.
5. No art form can _____ the absurdity of reality.
6. _____, in China's northwest, water is so scarce that farmers in a village in Gansu province only take three baths in their entire life, at birth, at marriage and at death.
7. Time passes quickly when you _____ reading a good book.
8. He preferred to _____ rather than steal.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. We have no other choice than to _____ them.
我们除了同意他们之外，没有别的选择。
2. Our price is attractive _____ that in the international market.
与国际市场相比，我们的价格是有吸引力的。
3. He often _____ headache these days.
这些天他常遭受头痛的困扰。
4. Raindrops come in _____ sizes, even within the same storm.
即使在同一场暴风雨里，雨滴也有各式各样的大小。
5. When we _____ free software, we are referring to freedom, not price.
当我们在谈论自由软件时，我们所指的是自由，而非价格。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Two studies are adding to the debate about the health risks of eating fish containing high levels of the metal mercury (水银, 汞). One study 1 that people who eat fish high in mercury may increase their risk 2 a heart attack. Yet another study found no 3 between mercury and heart disease.

Mercury is a natural 4. Some bodies of water have become 5 with mercury. High levels of the metal have been found in large fish, 6 shark and swordfish. Scientists say

mercury can be 7 to people. For example, it can harm the developing brain of a fetus (胎儿) or child. So some experts say that pregnant women 8 fish containing high levels of mercury. 9, the American Heart Association and other experts have 10 Americans to eat fish at least twice a week. Fish 11 important substances, and they are believed to 12 the risk of heart disease.

Scientists in Maryland organized one of the new studies. They examined 13 records of more than one thousand and four hundred men from Israel and eight European countries. They 14 men who had suffered a heart attack with healthy men. The study found that 15 levels in the men who had a heart attack were fifteen percent 16 than those with no history of heart disease. However, a study by the Harvard School of Public Health in Cambridge, Massachusetts 17 the findings. The Harvard scientists compared two groups of about five hundred American men. All the men in one group 18 a heart attack and the other men showed no 19 of heart disease. The Harvard scientists found no link between mercury and the risk of heart disease.

Many doctors say people should not stop eating fish because of 20 about mercury.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A) advises | B) suggests | C) predicts | D) objects |
| 2. A) of having | B) to have | C) with having | D) for having |
| 3. A) contradiction | B) difference | C) reason | D) link |
| 4. A) constituent | B) element | C) component | D) ingredient |
| 5. A) mixed | B) infected | C) polluted | D) influenced |
| 6. A) as well as | B) together with | C) such as | D) as large as |
| 7. A) harmful | B) beneficial | C) wicked | D) evil |
| 8. A) should avoid eating | | B) may not eat | |
| | C) may avoid eating | | D) must avoid to eat |
| 9. A) Therefore | B) In addition | C) For instance | D) However |
| 10. A) warned | B) forced | C) advised | D) halted |
| 11. A) are composed of | B) contains | C) involves | D) are consisted of |
| 12. A) increase | B) shrink | C) reduce | D) run |
| 13. A) logical | B) psychological | C) medical | D) dental |
| 14. A) compared | B) related | C) connected | D) competed |
| 15. A) water | B) blood | C) metal | D) mercury |
| 16. A) lower | B) less | C) higher | D) more |
| 17. A) approves | B) violates | C) accepts | D) disputes |
| 18. A) have suffered | B) have never suffered | C) had suffered | D) had never suffered |
| 19. A) sign | B) evidence | C) symptom | D) hint |
| 20. A) interests | B) information | C) concerns | D) conclusions |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions

What makes Americans spend nearly half their food dollars on meals away from home? The

answers lie in the way Americans live today. During the first few decades of the twentieth century, canned and other convenience foods freed the family cook from full-time duty at the kitchen range.

Then, in the 1940s, work in the wartime defense plants took more women out of the home than ever before, setting the pattern of the working wife and mother. Unless family members **pitch in with** food preparation, women are not fully liberated from that chore.

It's easier to pick up a bucket of fried chicken on the way home from work or take the family out for pizzas or burgers than to start opening cans or heating up frozen dinners after a long, hard day. Also nowadays, the rising divorce rate means that there are more single working parents with children to feed. And many young adults and elderly people, as well as unmarried and divorced mature people, live alone rather than as a part of a family unit and don't want to bother cooking for one. Fast food is appealing because it is fast, it doesn't require any dressing up, it offers a "fun" break in the daily routine, and the outlay of money seems small. It can be eaten in the car—sometimes picked up at a drive-in window without even getting out—or on the run. Even if it is brought home to eat, there will never be any dirty dishes to wash because of the handy disposable wrappings. Children, especially, love fast food because it's finger food, no struggling with knives and forks, no annoying instructions from adults about table manners.

1. Americans enjoy fast food mainly because _____.
 - A) it can be eaten in the car
 - B) it is much more tasty than home-made food
 - C) one only uses his fingers while eating it
 - D) it is time-saving and convenient
2. It can be inferred that children _____.
 - A) want to have freedom at table
 - B) wash dishes after each meal
 - C) are not good at using forks and knives while eating
 - D) take eating time as a fun break
3. Many Americans are eating out and not cooking at home nowadays because _____.
 - A) they want to make a change after eating the same food for years at home
 - B) the food made outside home tastes better than food cooked at home
 - C) many of them live alone or don't like taking trouble to cook
 - D) American women refuse to cook at home due to women's liberation movement
4. According to the text, a drive-in window is a _____.
 - A) car window from which you can see the driver
 - B) window in the restaurant from which you get your meal in the car
 - C) place where you check the mechanic condition of your car
 - D) entrance where you return the used plates after eating
5. The expression "pitch in with" (Line 2, Para. 2) probably means _____.
 - A) complain
 - B) enjoy
 - C) help
 - D) deny

Section C



动词不定式（一）

一、概念

动词不定式是非谓语动词的一种形式，是由“to + 动词原形”构成的，在某些情况下可以省略 to。动词不定式在语法功能上可作主语、宾语、表语、定语、宾补、同位语和状语。

二、动词不定式的时态与语态

动词不定式有时态和语态变化，如表 9.1 所示：

表 9.1 动词不定式的时态与语态

主动语态	被动语态
一般式 (not) to do	(not) to be done
完成式 (not) to have done	(not) to have been done
进行式 (not) to be doing	
完成进行式 (not) to have been doing	

1. 动词不定式的时态

1) 一般式

一般现在时表示的动作，有时与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生，有时发生在谓语动词的动作之后。

I hope to see you again. = I hope that I'll see you again. 我希望再见到你。

2) 完成式

表示的动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之前。

I'm sorry to have given you so much trouble.

很遗憾给你带来那么多麻烦。

He seems to have caught a cold. 他看起来感冒了。

3) 进行式

表示动作正在进行，与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。

He seems to be eating something.

4) 完成进行式

表示完成动作的同时，动作还持续进行。

She is known to have been working on the problem for many years.

据大家所知她研究这个问题很多年了。

2. 动词不定式的被动语态

1) 一般式

There is a TV to be repaired. 有一台电视要维修。

2) 完成式

They said they would have a bridge to have been finished by the end of this year. 他们说今年年底他们要完成一座桥的修建。

三、动词不定式的语法作用 (一)

1. 动词不定式作主语

动词不定式作主语时, 句子的谓语动词常用单数, 其位置有以下两种。

1) 不定式直接放在句首作主语

To see is to believe. 眼见为实。

To get there by bike will take us half an hour. 骑车到那里需要半个小时。

2) 用 it 作形式主语, 把真正的主语不定式置于句后, 常用于下列句式中:

(1) It + be + 名词 + to do

It is our duty to take good care of the old man. 照顾好那位老人是我们的责任。

(2) It + be + 形容词 + for sb + to do

It is difficult for us to finish writing the composition. 写完那篇作文对我们来说很难。

(3) It + be + 形容词 + of sb + to do

It is stupid of you to write down everything that the teacher says. 记下老师讲的所有内容是很愚蠢的。

(4) It seems (appears) + 形容词 + to do

It seems impossible to save money. 省钱看来是不可能的。

注意:

在 It 作形式主语的不定式句子中, 注意 of 与 for 的区别: 在句型 (2) 中, 用介词 for, 形容词修饰不定式; 在句型 (3) 中, 用介词 of, 形容词修饰 sb。

2. 动词不定式作宾语

1) 下列动词后必须跟不定式作宾语: afford, agree, arrange, risk, decide, other, demand, desire, determine, expect, elect, endeavor, hope, fail, happen, help, hesitate, learn, long, mean, manage, offer, ought, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, refuse, seem, tend, wait, wish, undertake 等。

The driver failed to see the other car in time. 司机没能及时看见另一辆车。

I happen to know the answer to your question. 我碰巧知道你那道问题的答案。

2) 动词 + 疑问词 + to: decide, know, consider, forget, learn, remember, show, understand, see, wonder, hear, find out, explain, tell 等。

Please show us how to do that. 请演示给我们如何去做。

There are so many kinds of tape-recorders on sale that I can't make up my mind which to buy. 有这么多的录音机, 我都拿不定主意买哪一种。

注意: 疑问词带不定式在句中作成分时, 谓语动词用单数。

The question is how to put it into practice. 问题是怎样把它付诸实施。

Unit Ten FRIENDSHIP

Section A



The Value of Friendship

Friendship is both a source of pleasure and a component of good health. People who have close friends naturally enjoy their company. Of equal importance are the concrete emotional benefits they derive. When something wonderful happens to us, sharing the happiness of the occasion with friends intensifies our joy. Conversely, in times of trouble and tension, when our spirits are low, unburdening our worries and fears to good friends eases the stress. Moreover, we may even get some practical suggestions for solving a particular problem.

Adolescence and old age are the two stages in our lives when the need for friendship is crucial. In the former stage, teens are troubled by uncertainty and mixed feelings. In the latter stage, older people are upset by feeling of uselessness and insignificance. In both instances, friends can make a dramatic difference. With close friends in their lives, people develop courage and positive attitudes. These positive outlooks are vital to cope successfully with the crises in these two stages of life.

Throughout life, we rely on small groups of people for love, admiration, respect, moral support, and help. Almost everyone has a “network” of friends: co-workers, neighbors, and schoolmates. While both men and women have such friends, evidence is accumulating that indicates men rarely make close friends. Men are sociable and frequently have many business acquaintances, golf buddies, and so on. However, friendship does not merely involve a sharing of activities; it is a sharing of self on a very personal level. Customarily, men have shied away from close relationships in which they confide in others. By bottling up their emotions, men deprive themselves of a healthy outlet for their negative feelings.

People choose some friends because they are fun to be with; they “Make things happen”. Likewise, common interests appear to be a significant factor in selecting friends. Families with children, for instance, tend to make friends with families with children. It is normal to befriend people who have similar lifestyles and organizations. These organizations provide an opportunity to socialize, make new acquaintances and friends, obtain helpful advice in adapting smoothly to a new

lifestyle. Other groups focus on specific interest such as camping or politics. It is perfectly acceptable to select friends for special qualities as long as there is a balanced giving and taking that is mutually satisfying.

As friendships solidify, ties strengthen. Intimate relationships enrich people's lives. Some components of a thriving friendship are honesty, naturalness, thoughtfulness, and some common interests.

Circumstances and people are constantly changing. Some friendships last "forever"; others do not. Nevertheless, friendship is an essential ingredient in the making of a healthful, rewarding life.



QUESTIONS

1. What are the two stages in our lives when the need for friendship is crucial?
2. Why do men rarely make close friends?
3. What appears to be a significant factor in selecting friends?
4. What are the components of a thriving friendship?



NEW WORDS

component [k3m3p3un3nt]	<i>n.</i>	成分; 组成部分
concrete [3k6nkri:t]	<i>a.</i>	具体的, 确实的
derive [di3raiv]	<i>v.</i>	(从……中) 得到, 获得
intensify [in3tensifai]	<i>v.</i>	(使) 加强, 增强, 加剧
conversely [k3n'v3:sl]	<i>ad.</i>	相反地; 反过来
tension ['ten73n]	<i>n.</i>	紧张, 烦躁
adolescence [:3ed3u'les3ns]	<i>n.</i>	青春期; 青春
crucial ['kru:73l]	<i>a.</i>	至关重要的; 关键性的
positive ['p6zitiv]	<i>a.</i>	自信的; 积极乐观的
outlook [3autluk]	<i>n.</i>	观点; 见解; 世界观; 人生观
vital [3vaitl]	<i>a.</i>	必不可少的; 对……极为重要的
accumulate [3'kju:mjuleit]	<i>v.</i>	积累; 积聚
sociable ['s3u73bl]	<i>a.</i>	好交际的; 合群的; 友好的
acquaintance [3'kweint3ns]	<i>n.</i>	认识的人; 熟人
obtain [3b3tein]	<i>v.</i>	(尤指经努力) 获得, 赢得
mutually ['mju:t7u3li]	<i>ad.</i>	相互地; 彼此; 共同地
solidify [s33lidifai]	<i>v.</i>	(使) 变得坚定, 变得稳固
strengthen [3stre903n]	<i>v.</i>	加强; 增强; 巩固
intimate [3intimit]	<i>a.</i>	亲密的; 密切的
thriving ['0raiv]	<i>a.</i>	兴盛的; 茁壮成长的
circumstance ['s3:k3mst3ns]	<i>n.</i>	(usually pl.) 条件; 环境; 状况
constantly ['k6nst3ntli]	<i>ad.</i>	始终; 一直; 重复不断地

nevertheless [ˌnev3ð3əles]	ad.	尽管如此; 不过; 然而
ingredient [in'gri:di3nt]	n.	因素, 要素
essential [ɪsən73l]	a.	极其重要的; 必不可少的
rewarding [ri'w6:di9]	a.	值得做的; 有益的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

cope with	对付, 处理
rely on	依赖; 依靠
shy away from sth	畏避; 回避; 躲避
confide in	向(认为可依赖的人)透露秘密(或个人隐私)
bottle up	长时间掩饰, 遏制, 隐瞒(不快等)
deprive sb/sth of sth	剥夺; 使丧失; 使不能享有
for instance	例如; 比如
tend to	往往; 趋向; 有……的倾向
adapt to	适应
focus on	集中(注意力、精力等)于



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- Of equal importance are the concrete emotional benefits they derive. 同样重要的是, 他们也获得了精神上的满足。
此句为倒装语序, 正常语序为 The concrete emotional benefits they derive are of equal importance.
be of importance = be important be of + 抽象名词 = be + 形容词
e.g. This question is of importance.(= This question is important.)
- Conversely, in times of trouble and tension, when our spirits are low, unburdening our worries and fears to good friends eases the stress. 相反, 遇到麻烦或压力, 情绪低落时, 好朋友会分担我们的忧虑和恐惧, 减轻我们的压力。
此句主语是 unburdening our worries and fears, 谓语是 eases。
unburden sth. to sb 倾诉; 诉说; 诉苦
e.g. She needed to unburden herself to somebody. 她需要找个人诉说心里的苦衷。
- Customarily, men have shied away from close relationships in which they confide in others. By bottling up their emotions, men deprive themselves of a healthy outlet for their negative feelings. 通常, 男人羞于向他人倾诉, 因而远离了亲密的友谊。由于抵制自己的感情, 他们消极的情绪得不到释放而有损健康。
- It is perfectly acceptable to select friends for special qualities as long as there is a balanced giving and taking that is mutually satisfying. 选择有特性的人做朋友, 只要付出与索取平衡, 使双方满意就好。
- Nevertheless, friendship is an essential ingredient in the making of a healthful, rewarding life. 不管怎样, 友谊都是健康有益的人生不可或缺的一部分。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

crucial	positive	strengthen	mutually	vital
sociable	obtain	ingredient	concrete	component

1. He has a _____ attitude towards life.
2. Adler was an outgoing, _____ kind of man.
3. These negotiations are _____ to the future of our firm.
4. These exercises are designed to _____ your stomach muscles.
5. Can we find a _____ convenient time to meet?
6. Our skin cream contains only natural _____.
7. The questions put forward at the meeting are of _____ importance.
8. He failed to _____ a scholarship.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

deprive sb/sth of sth	adapt to
rely on	cope with
focus on	tend to
for instance	bottle up
shy away from sth	confide in

1. What would you do, _____, if you found a roommate stealing?
2. Modern furniture design _____ simplicity.
3. It took her several months to _____ the quick pace of city life.
4. These days we _____ heavily _____ computers to organize our work.
5. He wasn't able to _____ the stresses and strains of the job.
6. Nowadays girls seldom _____ their mothers.
7. Why should you _____ yourself _____ such simple pleasures?
8. Each exercise _____ a different grammar point.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. I'm sure he will pass this exam _____ (只要他多加注意的话).

2. The young man was _____ (被指控偷了钱).
3. The room is in a terrible mess; it _____ (不可能打扫过).
4. Not until the game had begun _____ (他才到达运动场).
5. You may keep the book a further week _____ (倘若没其他人需要用).

Section B



TEXT



A Time to Say Hello

The year began softly. The weather in Southern China was warm and so were the students. The unexpected events of the year to come began to unfold, much too soon to become only an innocent treasured memory. Something precious should be held tight and not let it go. It was to be a year of surprises and a year of love.

His name is Tom, who sat at the front of the classroom looking anxious but attentive. In those first few days, his eyes bright with anticipation sought approval from me, his teacher. He claims now that he understood very little content in the lessons of the first few weeks. However, he successfully managed to give the illusion of understanding well.

His first writing assignment revealed the fact that he liked me and that he hoped we could be friends, “very good friends”. At that time neither of us suspected just how true that prophecy would eventually become. About a month later our lives began to intertwine and the delicately woven pattern of our lives began to become more intricate in the coming year. As time passed, we shared our viewpoints and feelings through conversation while chatting over tea and coffee, arousing the emotion deep in our hearts.

One day flowed smoothly into another. Familiar experience for me proved to be exciting and stimulating for him. Western festival celebrations like Halloween, Christmas and Valentine’s Day provided an avenue to celebrate together, to share warmth and good times. Traveling to new places introduced me to an exciting new world.

Every day there was laughter and underlying cares that carried both of us along to some degree of happiness. We learned together English and learned about life that year. Strangely the gap in our ages did not create my barrier for our friendship, he was young and vital, and I was feeling young again.

Time continues to slip by as a rushing river. You no longer inhabit my daily world, only my memory. From a distance your voice informs me that you are continuing to learn, you are growing. Some days you are happy, others not quite so much.

We no longer occupy the same space, but I remind myself that we still occupy the same world. When we chance to meet, hands reach out, hearts embrace, and once again confirm the same magic feeling. Such friendships come rarely in a lifetime. Thereby, I feel blessed and lucky.



QUESTIONS

1. What is the relationship between Tom and the author?
2. Did Tom understand the content in the lessons of the first few weeks?
3. What provided the author and Tom an avenue to celebrate together, to share warmth and good times?
4. How does the author feel about the friendship with Tom?



NEW WORDS

innocent ['in3snt]	a.	纯真的; 清白的
precious ['pre73s]	a.	珍奇的; 宝贵的
anticipation [æn;tisi'pei73n]	n.	期望
approval [3'pru:v3l]	n.	赞成; 同意
claim [kleim]	v.	声称; 断言; 宣称
content [ə'k3ntent]	n.	内容
illusion ['ilu:=3n]	n.	错觉, 假象
assignment [3ə'sainm3nt]	n.	任务, 作业
reveal [ri'vi:l]	v.	展示, 显露
suspect [s3səpekt]	v.	怀疑, 猜想
prophecy ['pr6fisi]	n.	预言
eventually [i'ventju3li]	ad.	最后, 终于
intricate ['intrikit]	a.	错综复杂的
viewpoint ['vju:p6int]	n.	观点
stimulate [əstimjuleit]	v.	刺激
avenue ['ævinju:]	n.	途径; 手段
underlying [;2nd3'laii9]	a.	根本的; 潜在的; 隐含的
barrier ['bæri3]	n.	障碍; 阻力
slip [slip]	v.	悄悄疾行; 溜
inhabit [in'hæbit]	v.	居住在; 栖居于
embrace [im'breis]	v.	抱; 拥抱
confirm [k3n'f3:m]	v.	证实, 证明, 确认
thereby ['ð43'bai]	ad.	因此; 由此; 从而

**PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS**

seek sth from sb
manage to do sth
continue to do sth
reach out

(向人) 请求, 寻求
设法做某事
继续做某事
伸出

**PROPER NAME**

Halloween
Valentine's Day

万圣节之夜
情人节

**NOTES TO THE TEXT**

1. However, he successfully managed to give the illusion of understanding well. 然而, 他却设法装成了理解得差不多的样子。
2. About a month later our lives began to intertwine and the delicately woven pattern of our lives began to become more intricate in the coming year. 大约一个月后, 我们的交往变得密切起来。这种精心培植的生活模式, 在新的一年里中变得更加微妙。
intertwine (使) 缠结, 缠绕在一起
delicately 精心地, 小心翼翼地
3. When we chance to meet, hands reach out, hearts embrace, and once again confirm the same magic feeling. 倘若还有机会相遇, 我们会伸出双手, 真心拥抱, 再次重温这奇妙的感觉。
chance 偶然发生; 碰巧
They chanced to be staying at the same hotel. 碰巧他们住在同一家旅馆。

**EXERCISES****Vocabulary Exercises**

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

barrier	precious	underlying	reveal	confirm
suspect	eventually	stimulate	inhabit	thereby

1. She hopes to get a job on the local newspaper and _____ work for "The Times".
2. Little by little he _____ his ambitions.
3. If you _____ a gas leak, do not strike a match or even turn on an electric light.
4. Before the arrival of the white man, Australia was _____ solely by Aborigines.
5. The government will do everything in its power to _____ economic growth.
6. The _____ reason for the failure remains unknown.
7. His letter _____ everything.
8. They soon overcame the language _____.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

lead to	seek sth from sb.
go with	manage to do sth.
in the long run	continue to do sth.
a wealth of	be content with
reach out	in haste

1. She managed to calm him down and _____ help _____ a neighbour.
2. We finally _____ get there in time.
3. She married _____ and regretted it ever since.
4. There is no doubt that stress can _____ physical illness.
5. It'll be cheaper _____ to use real leather because it will last longer.
6. These white shoes don't _____ your black trousers.
7. All of them _____ the life there.
8. There's _____ natural resources in the country.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. The more preparation you do now, _____ (你越不会紧张) before the examination.
2. You _____ (本不该一言不发就离开), your parents worried a lot about you.
3. But for the English examination, I _____ (就去听音乐会了) last Sunday.
4. Being somewhat short-sighted, she _____ (有盯着人看的习惯).
5. _____ (遵守规定很必要) for the visitors to the tourist spots.



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

More than forty thousand readers told us that they looked for in close friendships, what they expected 1 friends, what they were willing to give in 2, and how satisfied they were 3 the quality of their friendships. The 4 give little comfort to social critics.

Friendship 5 to be a unique form of 6 bonding. Unlike marriage or the ties that 7 parents and children, it is not defined or regulated by 8. Unlike other social roles that we are expected to 9 as citizens, employees, members of professional societies and 10 organizations—it has its own principle, which is to promote 11 of warmth, trust, love, and affection 12 two people.

The survey on friendship appeared in the March 13 of Psychology Today. The findings 14 that issues of trust and betrayal (背叛) are 15 to friendship. They also suggest that our readers do not 16 for friends only among those who are 17 like them, but find many 18 differ in race, religion, and ethnic (种族的) background. Arguably the most important 19 that emerges from the data, 20, is not something that we found—but what we did not.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A) on | B) of | C) to | D) for |
| 2. A) addition | B) reply | C) turn | D) return |
| 3. A) about | B) of | C) with | D) by |
| 4. A) results | B) effects | C) expectations | D) consequences |
| 5. A) feels | B) leads | C) sounds | D) appears |
| 6. A) human | B) mankind | C) individual | D) civil |
| 7. A) bind | B) attach | C) control | D) attract |
| 8. A) discipline | B) law | C) rule | D) regulation |
| 9. A) keep | B) do | C) show | D) play |
| 10. A) all | B) any | C) other | D) those |
| 11. A) friendship | B) interests | C) feelings | D) impressions |
| 12. A) between | B) on | C) in | D) for |
| 13. A) print | B) issue | C) publication | D) copy |
| 14. A) secure | B) assure | C) confirm | D) resolve |
| 15. A) neutral | B) main | C) nuclear | D) central |
| 16. A) ask | B) call | C) appeal | D) look |
| 17. A) most | B) more | C) least | D) less |
| 18. A) people | B) who | C) what | D) friends |
| 19. A) conclusion | B) summary | C) decision | D) claim |
| 20. A) moreover | B) however | C) still | D) yet |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Americans usually consider themselves as friendly people. Their friendships, however, tend to be shorter and more casual than friendships among people from other cultures. It is not uncommon for Americans to have only one close friend during their lifetime, and consider other “friends” to be just social acquaintances. This attitude probably has something to do with American mobility and the fact that Americans do not like to be dependent on other people. They tend to “compartmentalize” friendships, having “friends at work”, “friends on the softball team”, “family friends”, etc..

Because the United States is a highly active society, full of movement and change, people always seem to be on the go. In this highly charged atmosphere, Americans can sometimes seem brusque (无礼的) or impatient. They want to get to know you as quickly as possible and then move on to something else. Sometimes, early on, they will ask you questions that you may feel are very personal. No insult is intended; the questions usually grow out of their genuine interest or curiosity, and their impatience to get to the heart of the matter. And the same goes for you. If you do not

advise, allow, appoint, believe, cause, challenge, command, compel, consider, declare, drive, enable, encourage, find, forbid, force, guess, hire, imagine, impel, induce, inform, instruct, invite, judge, know, like, order, permit, persuade, remind, report, request, require, select, send, state, suppose, tell, think, train, trust, understand, urge, warn 等。

Father will not allow us to play on the street. 父亲不让我们在街上玩耍。

We believe him to be guilty. 我们相信他是有罪的。

2) 下列动词用动词 + 宾语 + 不带 to 不定式形式, 作宾语补足语:

感觉: feel;

听: listen to, hear;

看: watch, see, look at, find, observe, notice;

其他: make, have, help, keep.

We often see him cross this street. 我们经常看见他穿过这条街道。

The boss makes them work all the time. 老板让他们一直工作。

注意:

这些词用于被动结构时, 则要接带 to 的不定式, have, notice, watch 不用被动语态, let 后接单音节动词时, 不定式仍然不带 to。

I saw him play in the park. → He was seen to play in the park.

They let him go. → He was let go.

3) to + be 的不定式结构, 作补语的动词有:

acknowledge, believe, consider, think, declare, discover, fancy, feel, find, guess, judge, imagine, know, prove, see, show, suppose, take, understand 等。

We consider Tom to be one of the best students in our class. 我们认为汤姆是班上最好的学生之一。

4. 不定式作表语

1) 不定式可放在系动词后面作表语。

My work is to clean the room every day.

His dream is to be a doctor.

2) 如果在句子中有实义动词 do 时, 作表语的动词省略 to, 否则带 to。

She should do nothing but leave. 她除了离开别无他法。

I have no choice but to go. 除了去, 我别无选择。

5. 不定式作定语

不定式作定语通常要放在被修饰的词后。

I have a lot of work to do.

He made some candles to give light.

注意: 不定式作定语与被修饰的名词之间是动宾关系, 而不定式动词又是不及物动词时, 应在该动词后加一个介词形成逻辑上的动宾关系, 但 place, time, way 后接的不及物动词不定式可省略介词。

He has a nice pen to write with.

I do not think it is a good place to live (in).

6. 不定式作状语

1) 目的状语。

to, only to (仅仅为了), in order to, so as to, so(such)... as to

He ran so fast as to catch the first bus. 他飞快地跑以便赶上第一班车。

I come here only to say good-bye to you. 我来仅仅是向你告别。

2) 作结果状语, 放在句子后面。

He went abroad never to come back. 他去国外结果一去不回返。

He searched the room only to find nothing. 他搜查屋子结果什么也没发现。

3) 原因状语。

I'm glad to see you.

五、动词不定式的否定形式

动词不定式的否定形式在不定式前加 not。

My mother told me not to go out this afternoon. 我母亲告诉我下午不要出去。

It is important for us not to be late for the meeting. 开会不迟到对我们来讲是重要的。

六、动词不定式的复合结构

带有逻辑主语的不定式称为不定式的复合结构。当不定式的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致时, 在不定式之前加上名词, 在 It is + 形容词 + for/of + 名词或代词 + to do 结构中, 这便构成了不定式的复合结构。

It is important for us to learn English well. 对我们来讲学好英语是重要的。



Grammar Exercise

Choose the answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. She pretended _____ me when I passed by.
A) not to see B) not seeing C) to not see D) having not seen
2. The light in the office is still on. Oh, I forgot _____.
A) turning it off B) turn it off C) to turn it off D) having turned it off
3. We agreed _____ here but so far she hasn't turned up yet.
A) having met B) meeting C) to meet D) to have met
4. Little Jim should love _____ to the theatre this evening.
A) to be taken B) to take C) being taken D) taking
5. I would love _____ to the party last night but I had to work extra hours to finish a report.
A) to go B) to have gone C) going D) having gone
6. Frank is the kind of person who people like to _____.
A) make friend with B) make friends of C) make friends D) make friends with
7. Go on _____ the other exercise after you have finished this one.
A) to do B) doing C) with D) to be doing

8. She reached the top of the hill and stopped _____ on a big rock by the side of the path.
A) to have rested B) resting C) to rest D) rest
9. Tom kept quiet about the accident _____ lose his job.
A) so not as to B) so as not to C) so as to not D) not so as to
10. I need a day or two _____.
A) to think it over B) to think over C) of thinking D) to think over it
11. He was too excited _____.
A) speak B) to speak C) not to speak D) speaking
12. Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer.
A) to invent B) inventing C) to have invented D) having invented
13. He said he would rather not _____ it right now.
A) doing B) to do C) do D) to be doing
14. Rather than _____ on a crowded bus, he always prefers _____ a bicycle.
A) ride; ride B) riding; ride C) ride; to ride D) to ride; riding
15. They won't let their teacher _____ in that way.
A) to be treated B) being treated C) treated D) be treated
16. The chair looks rather hard, but in fact it is very comfortable to _____.
A) sit B) sit on C) be sit D) be sat on
17. I'm hungry. Get me something _____.
A) eat B) to eat C) eating D) for eating
18. I usually go there by train.
Why not _____ by boat for a change?
A) to try going B) trying to go C) to try and go D) try going
19. She did nothing _____ at the photo.
A) except look B) but to look C) except to look D) but looking
20. I asked him to _____ me a few minutes so that we could go over all the problems.
A) spend B) spare C) save D) share

Unit Eleven OCCUPATION

Section A



TEXT



An Ideal Position-1

When I decided to retire, I knew that the first step in the procedure was to write a letter to my employer, a school board, to resign my position. I postponed mailing the letter. I was reluctant to add the postage to the letter, knowing that once I mailed it, the decision could not be reversed.

Because I was a veteran teacher of many years, I would be eligible to receive a pension. I calculated that the revenue I would receive each month would be sufficient to sustain my current lifestyles. The money would be deposited directly into my bank account. I could withdraw cash from my investments if I needed to supplement my income, my credit rating would allow me to be eligible for a loan when some unforeseen financial crisis arose. I knew, therefore, that there was no reason to panic, as my future was secure even if inflation increased or a recession occurred. In either case my income would only be minus a few dollars, a fraction of the total amount.

I looked for clues to determine how striking the changes in my daily life would be. How would I spend my time? In spite of having many long yearly vacations when I could pursue other interests, I had not bothered to make an effort to confine my activities to one particular hobby. Would I use my time to volunteer at a hospital or maybe work for a local charity? Maybe I would apply for membership in a golf league. Maybe I would donate my time and work with the Better Business Bureau. I might decide to enter local politics and run for a position on town council.

In spite of the fact that the possibilities all had merits. I had to admit that I only had a superficial interest in pursuing any of them. In fact, I was indifferent to most of the options. Did I think they might interfere with other commitments or mean I would have to cancel other appointments? Or was I just too attached to the idea of teaching, feeling that it formed part of my identity?

I examined my emotions about the new direction my life would take. Would retirement add a

new dimension to my life and multiply my feelings of satisfaction or would the world apprehension be more applicable? As a certified teacher, did I feel obligated to work in the field of education? Did I feel entitled to sleep in late each day, or would that bother my conscience? Would I simply grow old gracefully or would feel that ridiculous?

My instincts told me that although I would feel grateful for my good health, curiosity about other countries and lifestyles would overtake the desire to spend my time with senior citizens, playing chess all day. Wouldn't I rather learn about other cultures and at the same time be an ambassador for my own country?



QUESTIONS

1. Why was the author reluctant to mail the letter immediately?
2. Would the author have to worry about money after he retired?
3. Was the author really interested in being a volunteer at a hospital, working for a local charity and so on?
4. How do you understand "...be an ambassador for my own country?"



NEW WORDS

resign [riːzain]	v.	辞职; 辞去 (某职务)
postpone [pɒst'pɒn]	v.	延迟; 延期
reluctant [ri'lʌktnt]	a.	不情愿的; 勉强的
reverse [ri'vɜ:s]	v.	颠倒; 彻底转变; 使完全相反
veteran ['vet3rən]	a.	经验丰富的; 老资格的
pension [əpenʃn]	n.	养老金; 抚恤金; 退休金
revenue ['revɜnju:]	n.	收入
sustain [s3s'tein]	v.	维持 (生命、生存)
inflation [in'fleɪʃn]	n.	通货膨胀
recession [ri'seʃn]	n.	经济衰退; 经济萎缩
fraction ['frækʃn]	n.	小部分; 少量; 一点儿
vacation [veɪ'keɪʃn]	n.	假期, 休假
volunteer [ˌvɒlɪn'ti3]	v.	自愿做; 义务做; 无偿做
charity ['tʃærɪti]	n.	慈善, 施舍, 慈善团体, 慈善机构
donate [dɒnə'teɪt]	v.	捐赠, 赠予
merit ['merɪt]	n.	优点, 价值
superficial [ˌsu:p3'fiʃl]	a.	肤浅的
option ['ɒpʃn]	n.	选择
multiply ['mʌltɪplaɪ]	v.	成倍增加; 迅速增加
obligated ['ɒblɪgeɪtɪd]	a.	(道义或法律上) 有义务的, 有责任的, 必须的
conscience ['kɒnʃns]	n.	良心; 良知
instinct ['ɪnstɪkt]	n.	本能; 天性
curiosity [ˌkjʊ3rɪ'6sɪti]	n.	好奇心



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

be eligible for sth/ eligible to do sth	有资格的; 合格的; 具备条件的
make an effort to do sth	努力做某事
confine sb/sth to sth	限制; 限定
apply for	申请
run for	竞选
in spite of	不管, 不顾
be indifferent to sb/sth	对……漠不关心
interfere with	干涉, 干扰
attach to	附属于, 喜爱
be/feel grateful for	感激的; 表示感谢的



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. I could withdraw cash from my investments if I needed to supplement my income, my credit rating would allow me to be eligible for a loan when some unforeseen financial crisis arose. 如果我需要补贴收入, 我可以撤回一些投资, 换成现金。而且, 我的信用等级使我有资格在出现无法预料的财政危机时得到银行贷款。
withdraw 提(款), 取(钱)
supplement 增补; 补充
2. In either case my income would only be minus a few dollars, a fraction of the total amount. 不论出现哪种情况, 我的收入只不过是减少些钱, 那只是总数中的一小部分而已。
minus (informal) without sth that was there before 无, 欠缺(曾经有过的东西)
e.g. We're going to be minus a car for a while. 我们要过一段没有车的日子。
3. In spite of having many long yearly vacations when I could pursue other interests, I had not bothered to make an effort to confine my activities to one particular hobby. 尽管有了很多一年一次的假期, 可以让我追求其他的兴趣爱好, 我还是想尽力把我的活动放在追求一个特别的爱好上。
4. Would retirement add a new dimension to my life and multiply my feelings of satisfaction or would the world apprehension be more applicable? 是退休给我的生活带来一种全新的方式, 使我倍感称心呢, 还是(走出去与人)沟通交流更切实可行?
dimension 尺寸, 尺度; 方面, 侧面
e.g. Her job added a new dimension to her life. 她的工作为她的生活增添了新的内容。
apprehension 理解
applicable 可适用的
5. My instincts told me that although I would feel grateful for my good health, curiosity about other countries and lifestyles would overtake the desire to spend my time with senior citizens, playing chess all day. 我的本能告诉我, 尽管我觉得身体很健康, 应该保持, 但对其他国家和其他生活方式的好奇心, 超过了希望把时间花在与老人们整天玩国际象棋上。

overtake 超过；赶上；大于，超过

senior citizen (also senior especially in AmE) 长者（委婉说法，尤指退休者）



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

reverse	option	curiosity	fraction	entitle
sustain	postpone	overtake	reluctant	donate

1. Few planets can _____ life.
2. You will be _____ to your pension when you reach 65.
3. Only a small _____ of a bank's total deposits will be withdrawn at any one time.
4. The government has failed to _____ the economic decline.
5. She was _____ to admit she was wrong.
6. Students have the _____ of studying abroad in their second year.
7. The game has already been _____ three times.
8. All _____ blood is tested for HIV and other infections.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

run for	in spite of
apply for	attach to
be indifferent to	interfere with
be grateful for	make an effort to do sth
confine sth to sth	be eligible for sth

1. They kept going _____ their fears.
2. We've grown very _____ this house and would hate to move.
3. The government cannot afford to _____ public opinion.
4. He never allows his personal feelings to _____ his work.
5. He decided to _____ President.
6. Please _____ your remarks _____ the issues at hand.
7. We would _____ any information you can give us.
8. He is _____ retirement.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. At the weekly meeting, everyone must _____ (发言都不能偏离会议议题)。

2. The finding of this study failed to _____ (将人们的睡眠质量考虑在内)。
3. I went out _____ (尽管下雨)。
4. The local clubs are _____ (正在努力吸引更多的年轻人)。
5. Specialists in intercultural studies say that it is not easy to _____ (适应不同文化中的生活)。

Section B



TEXT



An Ideal Position-2

After I retired, I began to inquire about opportunities and whenever I searched the internet for jobs, I always seemed to be drawn like a magnet to the category of teaching. It did not take long before I found that there were countless positions available in many countries. Amid the listings I identified several that were for teaching positions in China.

I decided that I would communicate with some of the people offering these positions. I sent e-mails and made phone calls to several prospective employers. The feedback that I got from most of them was that they expected to bring all the resources necessary. How could I pack enough in my baggage to provide what was needed? I was inclined to look for a situation where books were provided. I wanted to sign a contract for only one semester but found that most positions were for one or two years. I could sympathize with the amount of paperwork needed to arrange for a person to accept one of those positions and realized that it was wiser for people to spend a year or two in one location. I attended seminars by companies trying to recruit teachers. I found several companies that captured my interest.

I began to review my options. I asked specific questions about the positions with the companies that sincerely interested me. I inquired about how many suitcases I would be allowed to bring and what the living accommodations would be. It was refreshing to realize that there was a big demand for people who could teach English. Several positions seemed superior in their benefits and they sparked my interest even more.

I could hardly believe that I was contemplating doing this at this stage of my life. At times I felt that it was a radical idea but I also realized that I had always had the desire to have this kind of experience but circumstances never seemed quite right. Now they were. I decided to proceed.

I made an oral agreement with a company. I read their written contracts, clause by clause, to be sure nothing had been omitted from the oral agreement. In spite of wanting the

clause about staying two years to be deleted, I signed the legal contract after a few minor changes were made.

Five years ago, would I have thought that this was in the realm of possibility? I doubt that I would have. But here I am in China, in my second year of living in this amazingly progressive civilization, and I can honestly say that I have never once regretted my decision to teach in China. I must admit that I have learned far more from my students than they have learned from me. It has been a wonderful, rewarding experience and the one comment that comes to my mind is “I wouldn’t have missed it for the world!”



QUESTIONS

1. What was the author interested in when he searched the internet for jobs?
2. How long did the author prefer to sign a contract?
3. What made the author feel refreshed?
4. Did the author regret his decision to teach in China?



NEW WORDS

inquire/ enquire [in'kwai3r]	v.	询问, 打听
magnet ['mægnit]	n.	磁铁
identify [ai'dentifai]	v.	确认; 认出; 找到
prospective [pr3'spektiv]	a.	有望的; 可能的; 预期的
feedback ['fi:dbæk]	n.	反馈
resource [ri's6:s]	n.	资源; 财力
inclined [in'klaɪnd]	a.	想 (做某事); 有……倾向; 很可能
contract ['k6ntrækt]	n.	合同; 合约
semester [si'mest3]	n.	学期
attend [3'tend]	v.	出席; 参加
recruit [ri'kru:t]	v.	招募 (新兵), 吸收 (新成员)
capture ['kæpt73]	v.	俘获; 捕获
specific [spi'sifik]	a.	特定的
refreshing [ri'fre7i9]	a.	令人耳目一新的; 使人精力充沛的
superior [su:'pi3ri3]	a.	更好的; 占优势; 更高的
spark [sp1:k]	v.	激发
contemplate ['k6ntempleit]	v.	考虑; 思量
radical ['rædik3l, 'rædik]	a.	根本的; 激进的
proceed [pr3'si:d]	v.	继续做
minor ['main3]	a.	较小的; 次要的
realm [relm]	n.	领域
progressive [pr3'gresiv]	a.	进步的; 稳定发展的
comment ['k6ment]	n.	议论; 评论



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

inquire about sb/sth

be inclined to do sth

sympathize with sb/sth

capture sb's interest

be superior to sb/sth

询问; 打听

有……倾向; 很可能

体谅, 同情

引起兴趣

更好的; 占优势; 较高的



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. ...I always seemed to be drawn like a magnet to the category of teaching. ……我总是像一块磁石一样被吸引到教学目录上。
2. I could sympathize with the amount of paperwork needed to arrange for a person to accept one of those positions and realized that it was wiser for people to spend a year or two in one location. 我可以理解, 要安排一个人担任其中一个职位, 要做的工作量相当大, 并认识到受聘人员在一个地方待一年或两年是更明智的。
3. I attended seminars by companies trying to recruit teachers. 我参加了招聘老师的公司的讨论会。
4. In spite of wanting the clause about staying two years to be deleted, I signed the legal contract after a few minor changes were made. 尽管很想删掉关于工作两年的那一条, 但在做了一些较小的变动后, 我签署了法律合同。
sign a contract 签合同
5. It has been a wonderful, rewarding experience and the one comment that comes to my mind is "I wouldn't have missed it for the world!" 这是一次令人愉快的、十分有益的经历。这使我想起了一句话, 就是“无论如何我没有错过它!”
"I Wouldn't Have Missed It For the World" is a song made famous by country music singer Ronnie Milsap.



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

minor

identify

contract

refreshing

attend

recruit

proceed

comment

radical

specific

1. I cannot _____ this signature.
2. He did not _____ the meeting yesterday.
3. Our club has _____ 30 new members this year.
4. Education should not be restricted to any one _____ age group.

5. He made no _____ on our proposal.
6. I do not share his _____ views.
7. The old man took a drink from his cup and _____ with his story.
8. He left most of his money to his sons; his daughter only received a _____ share of his wealth.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| inquire about sb/sth | in place of |
| be inclined to do sth | sympathize with sb/sth |
| capture sb's interest | comply with |
| be superior to sb/sth | resort to |
| accuse sb of sth | contrary to |

1. This model is technically _____ its competitors.
2. The book helps parents how to _____ kids' _____.
3. They'll be more _____ listen if you don't shout.
4. I called the station to _____ train times.
5. I find it very hard to _____ him.
6. They have to _____ using untrained waiters.
7. _____ all our advice, he gave up his job.
8. They refuse to _____ the UN resolution.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. The endless music is _____ (把我逼疯)。
2. Only after I found out the truth _____ (我才意识到他是无辜的)。
3. I don't mind your _____ (不介意你迟作决定) as long as it is not too late.
4. Come and see your teacher _____ (无论你何时方便)。
5. It must _____ (肯定下雨了) last night! The road is still wet.



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

If you were to begin a new job tomorrow, you would bring with you some basic strengths and weaknesses. Success or 1 in your work would depend, to 2 great extent, 3 your ability to use your strengths and weaknesses to the best advantage. 4 the utmost importance is your attitude. A person 5 begins a job convinced that he isn't going to like it or is 6 that he is

going to fail is exhibiting a weakness which can only hinder his success. On the other hand, a person who is secure 7 his belief that he is probably as capable 8 doing the work as anyone else and who is willing to make a cheerful attempt 9 it possesses a certain strength of purpose. The chances are that he will do well. 10 the prerequisite skills for a particular job is strength. Lacking those skills is obviously a weakness. A bookkeeper who can't add or a carpenter who can't cut a straight line with a saw 11 hopeless cases. This book has been designed to help you capitalize 12 the strength and overcome the 13 that you bring to the job of learning. But in groups to measure your development, you must first 14 stock of somewhere you stand now. 15 we get further along in the book, we'll be 16 in some detail with specific processes for developing and strengthening 17 skills. However, 18 begin with, you should pause 19 examine your present strengths and weaknesses in three areas that are critical to your success or failure in school: your 20, your reading and communication skills, and your study habits.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A) improvement | B) victory | C) failure | D) achievement |
| 2. A) a | B) the | C) some | D) certain |
| 3. A) in | B) on | C) of | D) to |
| 4. A) Out of | B) Of | C) To | D) Into |
| 5. A) who | B) what | C) that | D) which |
| 6. A) ensure | B) certain | C) sure | D) surely |
| 7. A) onto | B) on | C) off | D) in |
| 8. A) to | B) at | C) of | D) for |
| 9. A) near | B) on | C) by | D) at |
| 10. A) Have | B) Had | C) Having | D) Had been |
| 11. A) being | B) been | C) are | D) is |
| 12. A) except | B) but | C) for | D) on |
| 13. A) idea | B) weakness | C) strength | D) advantage |
| 14. A) make | B) take | C) do | D) give |
| 15. A) As | B) Till | C) Over | D) Out |
| 16. A) deal | B) dealt | C) be dealt | D) dealing |
| 17. A) learnt | B) learned | C) learning | D) learn |
| 18. A) around | B) to | C) from | D) beside |
| 19. A) to | B) onto | C) into | D) with |
| 20. A) intelligence | B) work | C) attitude | D) weakness |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Work is a very important part of life in the United States. Americans spend most of their lives working. For most Americans, their work defines them: they are what they do. What happens, then, when a person can no longer work?

Most Americans stop working at age sixty-five or seventy and retire. Because work is such an important part of life in this culture, retirement can be very difficult. Retirees often feel that they are

- B) The difficult situation the retirees have.
C) A different opinion of the physical and emotional needs of the retirees.
D) A description of other activities the retirees can have.

Section C



GRAMMAR

分词（一）

一、概念

分词与不定式、动名词一起构成非谓语动词的三种形式。分词分现在分词、过去分词两种。现在分词由动词原形加ing构成，过去分词由动词原形加ed构成，不规则动词的过去分词按照不规则动词表进行。

分词可以在句中作状语、定语、表语、宾语补足语、伴随状语等。现在分词表示主动、进行的意思；过去分词表示被动、完成的意思。分词具有形容词、副词和动词的特征。

二、语法作用

1. 分词作状语

分词在句子中作状语，可以表示时间、条件、原因、结果、让步、伴随等。

分词（短语）作状语时，其逻辑主语应与句中主语相一致。当现在分词表示的动作发生在谓语动词之前时，则用现在分词的完成式，且所表示动作与谓语动作同时发生，则用现在分词的一般式。完成或被动关系用过去分词。

1) 现在分词

When leaving the airport, she waved again and again to us. 当她离开机场时，她一遍一遍地朝我们挥手。

While waiting for the train, I had a long talk with my sister. 当我在等车时，我和我姐姐进行了长时间的谈话。

2) 过去分词

Accompanied by his friend, he went to the railway station. 在他朋友的陪伴下，他去了火车站。

Once recovered, he threw himself into his work. 他一旦恢复了，就全身心地投入到他的工作中。

现在分词或过去分词作状语时，有时可以在分词前加 while, when, once, although, until, if 等关系词。

2. 分词作定语

分词作定语时，单个的分词通常放在被修饰的名词之前，分词短语一般置于所修饰的中心词后面。现在分词修饰的是发出该动作的名词（即与名词有主谓关系），过去分词修饰承受该动作的名词（即与名词是动宾关系）。

This is really an exhausting day to all of us! 对我们所有的人来说, 这真是疲劳的一天。

We will go on with our experiment as soon as we get the added fund. 我们一得到额外的实验经费, 我们就继续我们的实验。

We can see the part of the moon lighted by sunlight. 我们能看到在阳光映照下的部分月光。

After a night spent in excitement, I took a long walk along the beach the next day. 兴奋一夜之后, 第二天我沿着海滩进行漫长的散步。

More and more developing countries established strategic partnership with developed countries. 越来越多的发展中国家与发达国家建立了战略合作伙伴。

3. 分词作表语

表示心理感觉方面的词如 excite, move, interest, surprise, please, dismay, disappoint, amaze, embarrass, astonish, tire, worry 等, 如果修饰事物本身的性质, 用现在分词, 如果主语受影响或被感化, 用过去分词。

The news is surprising. 这则消息令人吃惊。(消息本质)

I am surprised. 我感到吃惊。(被感化)

This man is interesting. 这个人很有趣。(此人本质)

This man is interested. 这个人感兴趣。(被激起兴趣)

4. 分词作宾语补足语

1) 现在分词在 see, watch, hear, observe, notice, feel, find, glimpse, glance 等感官动词和 look at, listen to 等短语动词以及 have, keep, get, catch, leave 等使役动词后面与名词或代词构成复合宾语, 作宾语补足语。

I saw him passing my house at that time. 我看见他那时正经过我家。

I caught him stealing things in that shop. 我抓到他在那个商店偷东西。

I will have the clothes washed tomorrow. 明天我要洗衣服。

When they got back home, they found the room robbed. 当他们到家时, 他们发现屋子被抢劫了。

2) 如果把句子的宾语变为主语, 那么分词也就相应地由宾语补足语变成主语补足语。

He was found lying on the grass. 他被发现躺在草地上。

The ground was found covered with snow. 发现地面覆盖着雪。

5. 分词作伴随状语

伴随状语是一个主要动作发生的同时, 伴随着另一个动作的发生。

They came singing and dancing. 他们唱着跳着进来了。

He stood reading an interesting book. 他站着读一本有趣的书。

He came in followed by a student. 他后面跟着一名学生进来了。

The old man sat under the tree surrounded by children. 老人坐在树下, 被一群孩子包围着。

Unit Twelve HOLIDAYS

Section A



Christmas Day



Christmas is an annual holiday celebrated on December 25 that commemorates the birth of Jesus Christ. The day marks the beginning of the season of Christmastide, which lasts twelve days.

Early on the night before Christmas (Christmas Eve), children are encouraged to go to bed early if they expect Santa Claus (Saint Nicholas) to come and bring presents to them. They lay their heads on their pillows with visions of what the next day will bring. Santa is invisible to children since no one has actually seen him, his sleigh, or reindeer on Christmas Eve.

On Christmas Day, families usually get together for a roast goose or turkey dinner served with mashed potatoes, gravy, cranberry sauce, and pie or pudding for dessert. Grown-ups will pour a glass or two of wine or other spirits. Together, families will openly exchange gifts and gratitude. Children, including cousins, nieces and nephews, often kneel on the floor in front of the tree, excitedly trying to find presents with their names on them. On that day, warm receptions are extended to every one, friend or stranger.

One prominent symbol of Christmas is the Christmas tree. There are several explanations for its origin. One story suggests that Martin Luther was walking through a wood on a clear winter night admiring the beauty of the bright stars glowing through the branches of trees. He decided to cut down a small evergreen tree and take it home. He put candles in it to represent the stars he had seen earlier because he wanted to share that beautiful image with his family.

Another story tells of the bringing of an evergreen tree inside the home during Winter Solstice (December 21st) symbolizing the renewal of life in the dead of winter. It became associated with Christmas, which occurs only four days later. The Christmas tree was firmly established as a Christmas symbol by the Germans who eventually brought it to America.

Exchanging gifts and sending Christmas cards are the modern ways of celebrating the Christmas in the West. For many merchants, Christmas has become the economic boom season of

the year. Toy manufacturers and their contemporaries in advertising make a killing during this period. Christmas shopping hits a peak on Boxing Day, the day after Christmas, when stores offer great discounts to unload the unsold Christmas merchandise. This is usually the busiest shopping day of the year.

However, in recent years, more and more people have complained that Christmas has become too commercialized. An escalating tendency has been to buy more and more expensive gifts each year. The true religious meaning of Christmas is gradually disappearing. It has become a non-religious holiday! More children believe in Father Christmas than in Jesus. Christmas Day is a time for eating and drinking too much and watching television.



QUESTIONS

1. Why are children encouraged to go to bed early on Christmas Eve?
2. What does the bringing of an evergreen tree inside the home during Winter Solstice symbolize?
3. Who eventually brought the Christmas tree to America?
4. What is Boxing Day?



NEW WORDS

annual ['ænju:3l]	a.	每年的, 一年一次的
commemorate [k3'mem3reit]	v.	纪念
invisible [in'viz3bl]	a.	看不见的
mash [mæʃ]	v.	磨碎, 捣烂
exchange [iks'tʃeɪndʒ]	n.&v.	交换
gratitude ['grætɪtʃu:d]	n.	感谢; 感激
cousin ['kʌzn]	n.	堂兄 (或弟、姐、妹); 表兄 (或弟、姐、妹)
niece [ni:s]	n.	侄女, 甥女
nephew ['nefju:]	n.	侄子, 外甥
reception [ri'sepʃn]	n.	接待
prominent ['prɒmɪn3nt]	a.	显著的, 突出的
symbol ['sɪmb3l]	n.	象征
explanation [ˌekspl3'neiʃn]	n.	解释, 说明
merchant ['m3:tʃ3nt]	n.	商人
manufacturer [ˌmænju'fæktʃ3r3]	n.	制造商
contemporary [k3n'temp3rɪ]	n.&a.	同时代的人; 同时代的, 当代的
discount ['dɪskaʊnt]	v.	打折
merchandise ['m3:tʃ3ndaɪz]	n.	商品
commercialize [k3'm3:ʃ3laɪz]	v.	使商业化, 使商品化
escalate ['esk3leɪt]	v.	逐步升高
tendency ['tend3nsɪ]	n.	趋势
gradually ['grædju3li]	ad.	逐渐地



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

encourage sb to do sth
get together
extend sth to sb
associate with
make a killing
hit a peak

鼓励某人做某事
举行社交聚会；开会
提供，给予
结合，联合
突然赚得一大笔钱
达到高峰



PROPER NAME

Jesus Christ
Christmastide
Christmas Eve
Santa Claus
Saint Nicholas
Martin Luther
Winter Solstice
Boxing Day

耶稣
圣诞节节期
圣诞节前夕（12月24日）
圣诞老人
圣·尼古拉斯
马丁·路德（美国著名黑人民权领袖）
冬至
节礼日（圣诞节后的第一个工作日）



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. Santa is invisible to children since no one has actually seen him, his sleigh, or reindeer on Christmas Eve. 在圣诞节前夕孩子们是看不见圣诞老人的，因为实际上没有人看见过他、他的雪橇以及他的驯鹿。
sleigh 雪橇
reindeer 驯鹿
2. On Christmas Day, families usually get together for a roast goose or turkey dinner served with mashed potatoes, gravy, cranberry sauce, and pie or pudding for dessert. 在圣诞节，一家人通常聚在一起吃烤鹅或者烤火鸡，还有土豆泥、肉汤、酸果沙司和作为餐末甜点的馅饼或布丁。
roast goose 烤鹅
turkey 火鸡
gravy 肉汁
cranberry 酸果
sauce 调味汁
pudding 布丁
3. Another story tells of the bringing of an evergreen tree inside the home during Winter Solstice (December 21st) symbolizing the renewal of life in the dead of winter. 另一个故事讲的是，在冬至（12月21日）这一天，把一棵常青树搬回家，象征着在死寂的冬天生命的复苏。
evergreen tree 常青树

symbolize 象征
renewal 更新; 复兴

4. Christmas shopping hits a peak on Boxing Day, the day after Christmas, when stores offer great discounts to unload the unsold Christmas merchandise. 圣诞采购在圣诞节后的一天即节礼日达到高峰, 这个时候商店大打折扣, 倾销没有卖完的圣诞商品。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

exchange	gradually	boom	tendency	explanation
annual	gratitude	symbolize	prominent	discount

- I would like to express my _____ to everyone for their hard work.
- Would you like my old TV in _____ for this camera?
- Business is _____.
- They give 10% _____ for cash payment.
- I have a _____ to talk too much when I'm nervous.
- The use of light and dark _____ good and evil.
- He played a _____ role in the campaign.
- The most likely _____ is that his plane was delayed.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

hit a peak	encourage sb to do sth
get together	extend sth to sb
make a killing	focus on
range from...to...	stem from
up to	associate with

- The bank refused to _____ credit _____ them.
- We must _____ for a drink sometime.
- The teacher _____ the student _____ enter the competition.
- There are 100 students whose ages _____ 18 _____ 20.
- Most people's insecurities _____ something that happened in their childhood.
- I always _____ the smell of baking _____ my childhood.
- Terrorism incidents _____ in 2009.
- "To _____" means to earn a lot of money quickly through some kind of

lucrative business.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. _____ (多亏了一系列的新发明), doctors can treat this disease successfully.
2. In my sixties, one change I notice is that _____ (我比以前更容易累了)。
3. I am going to pursue this course, _____ (无论我要做出什么样的牺牲)。
4. I would prefer shopping online to shopping in a department store because _____ (它更加方便和省时)。
5. Many Americans live on credit, and their quality of life _____ (是用他们能够借到多少来衡量的), not how much they can earn.

Section B



TEXT

Halloween

Halloween is an annual holiday observed on October 31 in western countries. It has roots in the Celtic festival of Samhain and the Christian holiday All Saints' Day, but today it is largely a non-religious celebration.

Common Halloween activities include trick-or-treating, wearing costumes and attending costume parties, carving Jack-O'-Lanterns, parade, bonfires, apple bobbing, visiting haunted attractions, committing pranks, telling ghost stories or other frightening tales, and watching horror films.

Trick-or-treating is a customary celebration for children on Halloween. Dozens of children dressed in costumes knock at their neighbors' doors and shouted "Trick or treat?" when the door opens, asking for treats such as candy or sometimes money. The word "trick" refers to a "threat" to perform pranks on the homeowners or their property if no treat is given. Certain tricks such as soaping car windows and tipping over garbage cans are expected.

Halloween costumes are traditionally modeled after monsters such as ghosts, skeletons, witches, and devils. In recent years, science fiction-inspired characters as aliens and superheroes are



imitated. There are also costumes of pop culture figures like presidents, athletes or film, television and cartoon characters. Halloween costume parties generally fall on, or around, October 31, often falling on the Friday or Saturday prior to Halloween.

Carving pumpkins into Jack-O'-Lanterns is also a Halloween custom dating back to Ireland. The name Jack-O'-Lanterns comes from the Irish legend of Jack, who was notorious as a drunkard and trickster. After Jack died, he was denied entrance to Heaven because of his evil ways, but he was also denied access to Hell because he had tricked the devil. Instead, the devil gave him a single ember to light his way throughout the darkness. The ember was placed inside a hollow-out turnip to keep it glowing longer. When the Irish immigrants came to America, they found that pumpkins were far more plentiful and much larger than turnips. So the Jack-O'-Lantern in America was a hollowed-out pumpkin. Many families that celebrate Halloween carve a pumpkin into a frightening or comical face and place it on their doorstep after dark.

One popular game associated with Halloween parties is apple bobbing, in which apples float in a tub or a large basin of water and the participants must use their teeth to remove an apple from the basin.

Black and orange are the traditional Halloween colors and represent the darkness of night and the color of bonfires, autumn leaves, and Jack-O'-Lanterns.



QUESTIONS

1. What kinds of tricks do children usually play if no treat is given?
2. What are traditional Halloween costumes originally modeled after?
3. Why do people celebrate Halloween by using pumpkin?
4. What is the popular game associated with Halloween parties?
5. What are the traditional Halloween colors? And what do they stand for?



NEW WORDS

observe [3b'z3:v]	v.	庆祝; 庆贺; 欢度
costume ['k6stju:m]	n.	服装; 装束
carve [k1:v]	v.	雕刻
bonfire [;b6nəfai3]	n.	大火堆, 篝火
commit [k3'mit]	v.	做出; 犯
prank [præ9k]	n.	玩笑; 恶作剧
customary ['k2st3m3ri]	a.	习俗的; 习惯的
garbage ['g1:bid=]	n.	垃圾; 废物
devil ['devl]	n.	魔鬼; 恶棍
inspire [in'spai3]	v.	激发; 启发
alien ['eilj3n]	a.	陌生的; 外国的
	n.	外星人
athlete ['æ0li:t]	n.	运动员
legend ['led=3nd]	n.	传说; 传奇故事

notorious [n3u't6:ri3s]	a.	声名狼藉的; 臭名昭著的
evil ['i:v]	a.	恶毒的; 邪恶的
ember ['emb3]	n.	余烬
turnip ['t3:nip]	n.	萝卜
comical ['k6mik3l]	a.	好笑的; 滑稽的



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

refer to	描述; 涉及; 与……相关
tip over	(使) 跌倒, 倾覆
prior to	在前面的; 在……之前
date back to	追溯到; 始于
access to	通道; 通路



PROPER NAME

Celtic	凯尔特人
Samhain	萨温节
Christian	基督徒; 基督教的
All Saints' Day	万圣节 (每年的 11 月 1 日)



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- Halloween costumes are traditionally modeled after monsters such as ghosts, skeletons, witches, and devils. 传统的万圣夜服饰模仿怪物, 比如鬼魂、僵尸、巫婆、恶魔等。
- The name Jack-O'-Lanterns comes from the Irish legend of Jack, who was notorious as a drunkard and trickster. 杰克灯这个名字来自爱尔兰关于杰克的一个传说, 杰克是个醉汉而且爱搞恶作剧, 臭名昭著。

drunkard 醉汉

trickster 骗子

- ...the participants must use their teeth to remove an apple from the basin. ……让参加者必须用牙把苹果咬出盆。

remove sth from sth = take sth away from sth 移开; 拿开



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

attend	commit	customary	inspire	notorious
evil	costume	observe	legend	alien

1. The bar has become _____ as a meeting-place for drug dealers.
2. I _____ an error in handling the business.
3. He did not _____ the meeting yesterday.
4. He is the hero of an old _____.
5. Some people _____ Christmas here.
6. His paintings were clearly _____ by Monet's work.
7. The man was punished for his _____ acts.
8. It is _____ to tip the waiter.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

date back to	access to
regardless of	sign up for
resort to	refer to
tip over	nothing but
stay away from	prior to

1. The will was made two days _____ his death.
2. The college _____ medieval times.
3. The only _____ the farmhouse is across the fields.
4. This paragraph _____ the events of last year.
5. A canoe will sometimes _____ quickly.
6. _____ danger, he climbed the tower.
7. Many men _____ the army because they can not get ordinary jobs.
8. You're _____ a thief.



Translation

Fill in the missing parts of the following sentences.

1. Having spent some time in the city, he had no trouble _____
(找到去历史博物馆的路).
2. _____ (为了挣钱供我上学), Mother often takes
on more work than is good for her.
3. The professor required that _____ (我们交研究报告)
by Wednesday.
4. The more you explain, _____ (我越糊涂).
5. Though a skilled worker, _____ (他被公司解雇了)
last week because of the economic crisis.



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Valentine's Day may come from the ancient Roman feast of Lupercalia. 1 the fierce wolves roamed nearby, the old Romans called 2 the god Lupercus to help them. A festival in his 3 was held on February 15th. On the eve of the festival the 4 of the girls were written on 5 of paper and placed in jars. Each young man 6 a slip. The girl whose name was 7 was to be his sweetheart for the year.

Legend 8 it that the holiday became Valentine's Day 9 a Roman priest named Valentine. Emperor Claudius II 10 the Roman soldiers NOT to marry or become engaged. Claudius felt married soldiers would 11 stay home than fight. When Valentine 12 the Emperor and secretly married the young couples, he was put to death on February 14th, the 13 of Lupercalia. After his death, Valentine became a 14. Christian priests moved the holiday from the 15th to the 14th—Valentine's Day. Now the holiday honors Valentine 15 of Lupercus.

Valentine's Day has become a major 16 of love and romance in the modern world. The ancient god Cupid and his 17 into a lover's heart may still be used to 18 falling in love or being in love. But we also use cards and gifts, such as flowers or jewelry, to do this. 19 to give flower to a wife or sweetheart on Valentine's Day can sometimes be as 20 as forgetting a birthday or a wedding anniversary.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A) While | B) When | C) Though | D) Unless |
| 2. A) upon | B) back | C) off | D) away |
| 3. A) honor | B) belief | C) hand | D) way |
| 4. A) problems | B) secrets | C) names | D) intentions |
| 5. A) rolls | B) piles | C) works | D) slips |
| 6. A) cast | B) caught | C) drew | D) found |
| 7. A) given | B) chosen | C) elected | D) delivered |
| 8. A) tells | B) means | C) makes | D) has |
| 9. A) after | B) since | C) as | D) from |
| 10. A) ordered | B) pleaded | C) envisioned | D) believed |
| 11. A) other | B) simply | C) rather | D) all |
| 12. A) disliked | B) defied | C) defeated | D) dishonored |
| 13. A) celebration | B) arrangement | C) feast | D) eve |
| 14. A) goat | B) saint | C) model | D) weapon |
| 15. A) because | B) made | C) instead | D) learnt |
| 16. A) part | B) representative | C) judgement | D) symbol |
| 17. A) story | B) wander | C) arrow | D) play |
| 18. A) portray | B) require | C) demand | D) alert |
| 19. A) Keeping | B) Disapproving | C) Supporting | D) Forgetting |
| 20. A) constructive | B) damaging | C) reinforcing | D) retorting |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

Four weeks ago US children dressed as monsters and asked for sweets. That was Halloween. In a few weeks American houses will be red and green and filled with presents for Christmas.

As if all this isn't enough, on Thursday this week, America will enjoy another festival—Thanksgiving. Children will have two days off school, shops will close and houses will be filled with families enjoying mountains of food.

Every year, in Gainesville, Florida, all entire class celebrate Thanksgiving together. The class dresses up and puts on plays for their families. After the plays the families share a feast of traditional Thanksgiving foods like turkey and pumpkin pie.

Dean Foster, an 11-year-old boy will take part in this celebration. He said, "I love Thanksgiving because it means time off school, lots of nice food and a happy family."

His brother Ben, nine, said, "the best thing about Thanksgiving is that when it is finished, it is time to start Christmas."

But behind the food and the large amount of money spent there is another message. On Thursday evening, Dean and Ben's family will make a basket and put it on the table as they eat their evening meal.

Each of them will write a list of things that they are thankful for and place the paper in the basket. The family will read the pieces of paper and take time to thank God and each other for providing them with comfortable and happy lives.

Thanksgiving is a traditional festival that started in 1621, when the first pilgrims (朝圣者) arrived in the US to start a new life. After a hard year, they had a big autumn harvest. They held a feast and invited the native American Indians along to thank God for giving them enough food.

Many countries celebrate Thanksgiving. They often fall after the fields have been harvested and the crops collected for winter.

1. On Halloween, children in the United States often dress up as _____.
A) ghosts B) players C) pilgrims D) visitors
2. When are turkey and pumpkin pie eaten?
A) On Halloween B) On Thursday
C) On Thanksgiving D) On Christmas Day
3. Thanksgiving is the time for the American people to thank God for _____.
A) looking after them
B) providing them with comfortable and happy lives
C) clothing them
D) protecting them
4. Many children in the United States like Thanksgiving because _____.

- A) they can stay with their parents at home and eat a lot of nice food
 - B) they can dress up like monsters
 - C) they can put on plays
 - D) they can visit American Indians
5. The first pilgrims settled in the United States in _____.
- A) 1621 B) 1620 C) 1622 D) 1619

Section C



分词（二）

三、分词的时态与语态

分词的时态和语态如表 12.1 所示。

表 12.1 分词的时态和语态

主动语态	被动语态
一般式 writing	being written
完成式 having written	having been written
其否定形式一般式是 not writing	
完成式否定形式是 not having written	

现在分词与过去分词的区别：一般来讲，现在分词与过去分词主要区别在时态和语态方面。

1. 时态方面

现在分词表示正在进行的动作，过去分词表示已完成的动作。

falling leaves 正在飘落的叶子

fallen leaves 落叶

developing country 发展中国家

developed country 发达国家

2. 语态方面

现在分词表示主动，所修饰的人或物是分词动作的执行者，过去分词表示被动的意思，所修饰的人或物是分词动作的承受者。

an exciting film 一部令人兴奋的电影

excited people 兴奋的人们

the closing man 正在关门的人

the closed door 被关了的门

四、分词的独立主格结构

独立主格结构没有主语和谓语，只有逻辑上的主语，因此，是一个独立于句子成分之外的独特结构形式。独立主格结构可置于句首、句尾，常用逗号与主句隔开。

Winter coming, it gets colder and colder. 冬天来了，天气越来越冷了。

The rain having stopped, he went out for a walk. 雨停了，他出去散步。

独立结构常常可以看做是由主从复合句中的从句变来的。但是，如果从句和主句的主语相同，则不可改为独立结构。例如

Since he was very tired with his walk, he soon fell asleep and forgot his troubles.

不可改为独立结构：

He being very tired with his walk, he soon fell asleep and forgot his troubles.

但可改为分词结构：

Being very tired with his walk, he soon fell asleep and forgot his troubles.



Grammar Exercise

A Fill in the blanks with proper forms.

1. I like reading the novels _____ (write) by Zhang Ailing.
2. If _____ (allow), he will eat up all the food in the room.
3. There is something wrong with my car and I have to get it _____ (repair).
4. They woke up, finding everything around _____. (change)
5. There was a _____ (surprise) look on his face.
6. _____ (see) from the hill, our school looks beautiful.
7. The story was so _____ (move) that he was _____ (move) to tears.
8. _____ (dress) in red, the little girl looks pretty.
9. He read a magazine _____ (wait) for the bus.
10. I listened to the rain, _____ (think) that he would not come tonight.
11. She is _____ (interest) in the _____ (interest) film shown last night.
12. Are all Chinese textbooks _____ (publish) in your _____ (publish) house?

B Correct the mistakes in the following sentences.

1. When found that it was getting late, I put off the light and went to bed.
2. Asking who she was, she said she was Mr. Johnson's friend.
3. The talk giving last week was very moving.
4. Do you know the boy lied under the big trees?
5. Why do you stand and watch the water boiled?
6. It was so cold that the traveler had the fire burned all night.
7. Don't get catch in the rain.
8. It was so moving a poem that a few children were moving tears.
9. The flower needs to be water.

Unit Thirteen **POLITICS**

Section A



TEXT



Michelle Obama is a black skinned beauty

Throughout this long, tense election, everyone has focused on the presidential candidates and how they'll change America. Rightly so, but selfishly, I'm more fascinated by Michelle Obama and what she might be able to do, not just for this country, but for me as an African-American woman. As the potential First Lady, she would have the world's attention. And that means that for the first time people will have a chance to get up close and personal with the type of African-American woman they so rarely see.

Usually, the lives of black women go largely unexamined. The prevailing theory seems to be that we're all hot-tempered single mothers who can't keep a man. Even in the world of make-believe, black women still can't escape the stereotype of being eye-rolling, oversexed females raised by our never-married, alcoholic mothers.

These images have helped define the way all women are viewed, including Michelle Obama. Before she ever gets the chance to commit to a cause, charity or foundation as First Lady, her most urgent and perhaps most complicated duty may be simple to be herself.

It won't be easy. Because few mainstream publications have done in-depth features on regular African-American women, little is known about who we are, what we think and what we face on a regular basis. For better or worse, Michelle will represent us all.

Just as she will have her critics, she will also have millions of fans who usually have little interest in the First Lady. Many African-American blogs have written about what they'd like to see Michelle bring to the White House—mainly showing the world that a black woman can support her man and raise a strong black family. Michelle will have to work to please everyone—an impossible task. But for many African-American women like me, just a little of her poise, confidence and intelligence will go a long way in changing an image that's been around for far too long.



QUESTIONS

1. Why does Michelle Obama hold a strong fascination for the author?
2. What is the common stereotype of African-American women according to the author?
3. What do many African-Americans write about in their blogs?
4. What does the author say about Michelle Obama as a First Lady?
5. What do many African-American women hope Michelle Obama will do?



NEW WORDS

throughout [0ru:'aut]	<i>prep.</i>	遍及, 贯穿
election [i'lek73n]	<i>n.</i>	选举, 当选
candidate ['kændidit]	<i>n.</i>	候选人, 申请求职者
selfishly ['selfi7li]	<i>ad.</i>	自私地, 任性地, 擅自地
fascinate ['fæsineit]	<i>v.</i>	使着迷, 使极感兴趣
prevailing [pri'veili9]	<i>a.</i>	普遍的, 盛行的, 流行的
theory ['0i3ri]	<i>n.</i>	理论, 学说, 看法
hot-tempered [h6t'temp3d]	<i>a.</i>	性急的, 易怒的, 暴躁的
stereotype ['steri3taip]	<i>n.</i>	陈规, 固定的看法
define [di'fain]	<i>v.</i>	界定, 下定义
alcoholic [;ælk3əh6lik]	<i>a.</i>	酗酒的, 酒精的
foundation [faun'dei73n]	<i>n.</i>	建立, 创办; 基础; 基金
urgent ['3:d=3nt]	<i>a.</i>	紧要的, 催促的
complicated ['k6mplikeitid]	<i>a.</i>	(结构) 复杂的
mainstream ['meinstri:m]	<i>n.</i>	(思想或行为的) 主流
feature ['fi:t73]	<i>n.</i>	特写, 专题报道
poise [p6iz]	<i>n.</i>	沉着, 泰然自若
intelligence [in'telid=3ns]	<i>n.</i>	智力, 智慧; 理解力



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

focus on	聚焦于……集中精神于……对……予以注意
have one's attention	引起……注意
have a chance to do	有机会……
commit to	使(自己)致力于……; 把……托付给……
for better or worse	不论好坏
go a long way	(做某事)有相当大的作用; 花很长时间、任重道远
on a...basis	以……方式
far too	很大程度上, 极其



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. And that means that for the first time people will have a chance to get up close and personal with the type of African-American woman they so rarely see. 这意味着人们

即将首次有和她零距离接触的机会，而她代表的正是人们平时极少接触的非洲裔女性美国公民。

文中第二个 *that* 引导一个宾语从句，结构稍显复杂，其主干部分是 *people will have a chance to get up...with the type of African-American woman...*，意为“人们将有机会接触这一类型的非洲裔美国女性”。*they so rarely see* 是 *woman* 的定语从句。

2. Because few mainstream publications have done in-depth features on regular African-American women, little is known about who we are, what we think and what we face on a regular basis. 主流的媒体们都未曾深入报道过普通非洲裔美国女性，所以我们是什么样的人，我们的思想和我们通常面临的问题都鲜为人知。

本句的开头部分是 *Because* 引导的原因状语从句。逗号之后是本句的主句 *little is known*，*about* 之后是由 *who*, *what*, and *what* 引导的三个介词宾语从句。句末的短语 *on a regular basis*，意为“通常”。

3. But for many African-American women like me, just a little of her poise, confidence and intelligence will go a long way in changing an image that's been around for far too long. 但对于像我一样的非洲裔美国人来说，即便能够学到她的一丝沉着、一丝自信和一丝聪慧，那都将会很大程度上改变长久以来黑人女性给人的印象。

句子的主语较长是 *a little of her poise, confidence and intelligence*。谓语部分是 *will go a long way*，此处可以理解为 *will have an important influence*。句末 *in changing an image that...* 作方式状语，其中 *that* 从句是定语修饰 *image*。



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

election	candidate	fascinate	prevailing	stereotype
commit	feature	represent	define	charity

- It's wrong to _____ people, as if they were all alike.
- Her beauty _____ every boy.
- The front page _____ on coal mining is impressive.
- Poor as they were, the old couple never asked for _____.
- Most of us will accept the _____ set of cultural values.
- He is running as a _____ for Liberal party.
- He has _____ himself to support them.
- The Foreign Minister _____ the country at the conference.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

have one's attention

have a chance to do

change an image

commit to

focus on

for better or worse

go a long way

raise a family

far too

on a...basis

1. A little kindness will _____ with some people.
2. _____ diversity and social responsibility.
3. Could I _____?
4. Today we're going to _____ the question of homeless people.
5. Interest accrues _____ daily _____.
6. It is been done, and, _____, we can not change it now.
7. We will do our best to let everyone _____ upgrade their skills if they so wish.
8. He has _____ much pride.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 在对这个问题众多的研究中，有两个方面越来越引人注目。
2. (认为)日本女人百依百顺就是令人不快的文化固定观念的一个例子。
3. 没有人能处理复杂的中东政局。
4. 他的思想符合美国的主流思想。
5. 他泰然自若地接受那消息。

Section B



TEXT

Change Has Come to America —Barack Obama's Victory Speech (Excerpt)

Hello, Chicago.

If there is anyone out there who still doubts that America is a place where all things are



possible; who still wonders if the dream of our founders is alive in our time; who still questions the power of our democracy, tonight is your answer.

It's the answer that led those who have been told for so long by so many to be cynical, and fearful, and doubtful of what we can achieve to put their hands on the arc of history and bend it once more toward the hope of a better day.

It's been a long time coming, but tonight, because of what we did on this day, in this election, at this defining moment, change has come to America.

I would not be standing here tonight without the unyielding support of my best friend for the last sixteen years, the rock of our family and the love of my life, our nation's next First Lady, Michelle Obama.

But above all, I will never forget who this victory truly belongs to—it belongs to you.

Tonight we proved once more that the true strength of our nation comes not from our the might of our arms or the scale of our wealth, but from the enduring power of our ideals: democracy, liberty, opportunity, and unyielding hope.

For that is the true genius of America—that America can change. Our union can be perfected. And what we have already achieved gives us hope for what we can and must achieve tomorrow.

This is our moment. This is our time—to put our people back to work and open doors of opportunity for our kids; to restore prosperity and promote the cause of peace; to reclaim the American Dream and reaffirm that fundamental truth – that out of many, we are one; that while we breathe, we hope, and where we are met with cynicism, and doubt, and those who tell us that we can't, we will respond with that timeless creed that sums up the spirit of a people.

Yes We Can. Thank you, God bless you, and may God bless the United States of America.



QUESTIONS

1. According to paragraph 5, whom will Obama thank for at this important moment?
2. According to Obama, where does the true strength of America come from?
3. What is the true genius of America?



NEW WORDS

wonder ['wʌndɜː]

democracy [di'mɒkrəsi]

cynical ['sɪnikəl]

fearful ['fiːfəl]

doubtful ['daʊtfl]

unyielding [2n'ji:ldiə]

victory ['vɪktəri]

scale [skeil]

enduring [in'dʒuəriə]

liberty ['libɜːti]

v.

n.

a.

a.

a.

a.

n.

n.

a.

n.

想知道, 想弄明白

民主, 民主制, 民主精神

怀疑的, 愤世嫉俗的

惧怕的, 担心的

怀疑的, 可疑的

坚硬的, 不屈的

胜利, 成功, 赢

规模; 程度; 范围; 等级; 刻度

持久的, 不朽的

自由, 自主

genius ['d=i:nj3s]	<i>n.</i>	天才, 天赋; 精华
prosperity [pr6s'periti]	<i>n.</i>	繁荣, 兴旺
promote [pr3'm3ut]	<i>v.</i>	促进; 推动; 增进
reclaim [ri'kleim]	<i>v.</i>	重新确立
reaffirm ['ri:3'f3:m]	<i>v.</i>	再次证明
fundamental [ˌf2nd3əmentl]	<i>a.</i>	基本的; 重要的, 必要的
cynicism ['sinisiz3m]	<i>n.</i>	嘲讽, 讥笑
creed [kri:d]	<i>n.</i>	信条



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

achieve to	达到, 成就
above all	最重要的是; 尤其
belong to	属于
put one's hands on	触, 摸; 插手, 帮助
open doors of opportunity for	为……敞开机会的大门
respond with	回应, 报以
sum up	总结, 概括; 合计
god bless you	上帝保佑你(们)



NOTES TO THE TEXT

- It's the answer that led those who have been told for so long by so many to be cynical, and fearful, and doubtful of what we can achieve to put their hands on the arc of history and bend it once more toward the hope of a better day. 这是一个引导人们的答案, 太多的人在很长的时间内给他们说这个答案, 以至于他们对此持愤世嫉俗的态度, 对我们是否可以再一次把握历史的希望感到担心和怀疑。
put one's hands on 插手, 帮助
e.g. Please put your hands on his affairs. 请你帮他的忙。
- I would not be standing here tonight without the unyielding support of my best friend for the last sixteen years, the rock of our family and the love of my life, our nation's next First Lady, Michelle Obama. 如果没有我过去 16 年最好的朋友、我们家庭的中坚、我生命中的挚爱, 我今天晚上不可能站在这里, 美国下一位第一夫人米歇尔·奥巴马。
unyielding 坚硬的, 不屈的
Extensive scholarship with dedication and earnest inquiry with close examination. 博学而笃志, 切问而近思。
the rock of ……的中流砥柱, 中坚力量
We college students are the rock of our nation in the future. 我们大学生是祖国未来的中流砥柱。
- For that is the true genius of America—that America can change. 这才是美国真正的精华——美国能够改变。
genius 天才, 天赋; 精华

He has a genius for getting along with children. 他擅长与孩子们打成一片。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

victory	democracy	prosperity	creed	promote
fundamental	cynical	reaffirm	genius	enduring

1. This is an indispensable part of his _____.
2. The government _____ its commitment to the peace process.
3. I think we should hire a public relations firm to _____ our product.
4. They believed strongly that _____ depended on responsibility.
5. Demands for _____ change were common throughout the labor press.
6. They may enter a marriage whose success is expected to be guaranteed by their _____ love.
7. The _____ of a nation depends on the development of education.
8. The driving force behind hostility is a _____ mistrust of others.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

achieve to	above all
belong to	put one's hands on
open doors of opportunity for	respond with
sum up	God bless you
the rock of	be doubtful of

1. He was _____ a good and tireless writer.
2. Man acts as if he does not _____ nature.
3. The new employment policy _____ the graduates.
4. It's the time for the Dalai Lama to _____ sincerity and prove it by deeds after the Chinese Central Government communicated goodwill to him during a meeting with his private representatives.
5. To _____, the job interview is indeed important.
6. Don't _____ all the persons that had helped you but without asking for any payments.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 我想知道下个月我是否能早点去度假?
2. 真正的胜利不是战胜对手, 而是战胜自己。
3. 这很可能在很大程度上改变了没有吸引力的个性的领导者出现的局面。
4. 当你要取回行李时, 必须出示这张票子。
5. 当别人打喷嚏时你应该说“上帝保佑你”。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

Older people must be given more chances to learn if they are to contribute to society rather than be a financial burden, according to a new study on population published recently.

The current people approach which 1 on younger people and on skills for employment is not 2 to meet the challenges of demographic (人口结构的) change, it says. Only 1% of the education budget is 3 spent on the oldest third of the population.

The 4 include the fact that most people can expect to spend a third of their lives in 5, that there are now more people over 59 than under 16 and that 11.3 million people are 6 state pension age.

“7 needs to continue throughout life. Our historic concentration of policy attention and resources 8 young people cannot meet the new 9,” says the report’s author, Professor Stephen McNair.

The major 10 of our education budget is spent on people below the age of 25. 11 people are changing their jobs, 12, partners and lifestyles more often than 13, they need opportunities to learn at every age 14, some people are starting new careers in their 50s and later.

People need opportunities to make a “midlife review” to 15 to the later stage of employed life, and to plan for the transition (过渡) 16 retirement, which may now happen 17 at any point from 50 to over 90, says McNair.

And there should be more money 18 to support people in establishing a 19 of identity and finding constructive 20 for the “third age”, the 20 or more years they will spend in healthy retired life.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A) operates | B) focuses | C) counts | D) depends |
| 2. A) superior | B) regular | C) essential | D) adequate |
| 3. A) currently | B) barely | C) anxiously | D) heavily |
| 4. A) regulations | B) obstacles | C) challenges | D) guidelines |
| 5. A) enjoyment | B) retirement | C) stability | D) inability |
| 6. A) over | B) after | C) across | D) beside |

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|
| 7. | A) Identifying | B) Learning | C) Instructing | D) Practicing |
| 8. | A) at | B) by | C) in | D) on |
| 9. | A) desires | B) realms | C) needs | D) intentions |
| 10. | A) measure | B) ratio | C) area | D) portion |
| 11. | A) When | B) Until | C) Whether | D) Before |
| 12. | A) neighbors | B) moods | C) homes | D) minds |
| 13. | A) age | B) ever | C) previously | D) formerly |
| 14. | A) For example | B) By contrast | C) In particular | D) On average |
| 15. | A) transform | B) yield | C) adjust | D) suit |
| 16. | A) within | B) from | C) beyond | D) to |
| 17. | A) unfairly | B) unpredictably | C) instantly | D) indirectly |
| 18. | A) reliable | B) considerable | C) available | D) feasible |
| 19. | A) sense | B) conscience | C) project | D) definition |
| 20. | A) ranks | B) assets | C) ideals | D) roles |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

When next year's crop of high-school graduates arrive at Oxford University in the fall of 2009, they'll be joined by a new face; Andrew Hamilton, the 55-year-old provost (教务长) of Yale, who'll become Oxford's vice-chancellor—a position equivalent to university president in America.

Hamilton isn't the only educator crossing the Atlantic. Schools in France, Egypt, Singapore, etc, have also recently made top-level hires from abroad. Higher education has become a big and competitive business nowadays, and like so many businesses, it's gone global. Yet the talent flow isn't universal. High-level personnel tend to head in only one direction: outward from America.

The chief reason is that American schools don't tend to seriously consider looking abroad. For example, when the board of the University of Colorado searched for a new president, it wanted a leader familiar with the state government, a major source of the university's budget. "We didn't do any global consideration," says Patricia Hayes, the board's chair. The board ultimately picked Bruce Benson, a 69-year-old Colorado businessman and political activist (活动家) who is likely to do well in the main task of modern university presidents: fund-raising. Fund-raising is a distinctively American thing, since U.S. schools rely heavily on donations. The fund-raising ability is largely a product of experience and necessity.

Many European universities, meanwhile, are still mostly dependent on government funding. But government support has failed to keep pace with rising student number. The decline in government support has made funding-raising an increasing necessary ability among administrators and has hiring committees hungry for Americans.

In the past few years, prominent schools around the world have joined the trend. In 2003, when Cambridge University appointed Alison Richard, another former Yale provost, as its vice-chancellor, the university publicly stressed that in her previous job she had overseen "a major

strengthening of Yale's financial position".

Of course, fund-raising isn't the only skill outsiders offer. The globalization of education means more universities will be seeking heads with international experience of some kind of promote international programs and attract a global student body. Foreigners can offer a fresh perspective on established practices.

1. What is the current trend in higher education discussed in the passage?
 - A) Institutions worldwide are hiring administrators from the U.S.
 - B) A lot of political activists are being recruited as administrators.
 - C) American universities are enrolling more international students.
 - D) University presidents are paying more attention to funding-raising.
2. What is the chief consideration of American universities when hiring top-level administrators?
 - A) The political correctness.
 - B) Their ability to raise funds.
 - C) Their fame in academic circles.
 - D) Their administrative experience.
3. What do we learn about European universities from the passage?
 - A) The tuitions they charge have been rising considerably.
 - B) Their operation is under strict government supervision.
 - C) They are strengthening their position by globalization.
 - D) Most of their revenues come from the government.
4. Cambridge University appointed Alison Richard as its vice-chancellor chiefly because _____.
 - A) she was known to be good at raising money
 - B) she could help strengthen its ties with Yale
 - C) she knew how to attract students overseas
 - D) she had boosted Yale's academic status
5. In what way do top-level administrators from abroad contribute to university development?
 - A) They can enhance the university's image.
 - B) They will bring with them more international faculty.
 - C) They will view a lot of things from a new perspective.
 - D) They can set up new academic disciplines.

Section C



GRAMMAR

动名词（一）

一、概念

动名词是动词非谓语形式的一种，由动词变化而来，具有动词的某些特征，也具有名词性。动名词在句中当名词使用，作主语、宾语、表语、定语。可以有自己的宾语和状语。

二、动名词的语法作用

1. 作主语

动名词作主语有如下几种常见情况。

1) 直接位于句首作主语。

Climbing mountains is really fun. 爬山真是有趣

Working in these conditions is not a pleasure. 在这种工作条件下工作不是一件愉快的事。

2) 用 it 作形式主语，把动名词（真实主语）置于句尾作后置主语，如 it's no good; it's no little/ hardly any/ use; it's not/ hardly/ scarcely use; it's worthwhile; there's no; there's no point in; there's nothing worse than; what's the use/point 等句型。通常用动名词作真实主语。

It is no use telling him not to worry.

3) 用于布告形式的省略结构中。

No smoking. 禁止吸烟。

No parking. 禁止停车。

2. 作宾语

1) 作动词的宾语。

某些动词后出现非限定性动词时只能用动名词作宾语，不能用不定式。常见的此类动词有：admit, appreciate, avoid, celebrate, consider, contemplate, defer, delay, deny, detest, discontinue, dislike, dispute, enjoy, entails, escape, excuse, explain, fancy, feel, like, finish, forgive, can't help, hinder, imagine, involve, keep, mean, mention, mind, miss, necessitate, pardon, postpone, practice, prevent, recall, report, resent, resist, risk, suggest, understand, can't stand, be used to, get used to, devote to, look forward to, pay attention to, get down to, be well worth, be busy等。

I found it pleasant walking along the seashore. 在海滩上走真是乐事。

Mark often attempts to escape being fined whenever he breaks traffic regulations. 每当马克违反交通规则时，他常常企图逃避罚款的处分。

2) 作介词的宾语，介词后通常使用动名词。

We are thinking of making a new plan for the next term. 我们正考虑为下学期制订新计划。

Shall we have a rest or get down to doing our work? 我们休息呢还是开始干活？

3) 在 allow, advice, forbid, permit 等动词后直接跟动词作宾语, 用动名词形式, 如果后面有宾语, 而用动词作宾补, 其宾补用动词不定式。

We do not allow smoking in the room. 我们不允许在屋子吸烟。

We do not allow him to smoke in the room. 我们不允许他在屋子吸烟。

3. 作表语

动名词作表语时句子主语常是表示抽象的、无生命的事物的名词或 what 引导名词性从句, 主语和表语指的是同样的内容。

Your task is cleaning the windows. (Cleaning the windows is your task.) 你的任务就是擦窗户。

What I hate most is being laughed at. (Being laughed at is what I hate most.) 我最痛恨的就是被别人嘲笑。

4. 作定语

动名词作定语往往表示被修饰词的某种用途。

a walking stick

a washing machine

三、动名词的复合结构

带有逻辑主语的动名词称为动名词的复合结构。当动名词的逻辑主语与句子的主语不一致时, 要在动名词之前加上物主代词或名词所有格, 这便构成了动名词的复合结构。

Her coming to help encouraged all of us. 他来帮忙鼓舞了我们所有人。

Jane's being careless caused so much trouble. 简的粗心惹来了不少麻烦。

What's troubling them is their not having enough food. 烦恼他们的是食物不足。

在口语中, 如果动名词复合结构作宾语, 其中的物主代词常用人称代词宾格, 名词所有格常用名词普通格来代替, 但在句首作主语时不能这样来代替。

Would you mind my/me using your computer? 用一下你的计算机介意吗?

Father insisted on his son's/ his son going to college. 爸爸坚决要求儿子上大学。

Mary's (不可用 Mary) being ill made her mother upset. 玛丽病了, 使她妈妈很着急。

在下列情况下动名词的逻辑主语必须用名词的普通格或人称代词宾格。

1) 无命名词

The baby was made awake by the door suddenly shutting. 这个婴儿被猛烈的关门声吵醒。

2) 有生命名词但表示泛指意义

Have you ever heard of women practising boxing? 你听说过妇女练拳击吗?

Unit Fourteen FUTURE

Section A



TEXT



Future or Fantasy? (1)

What will our world be like in the future? Can we look ahead twenty five years and dream about the transformations that will take place? The scholars who make it their business to try to predict the future are not all in agreement about what the future holds. If you visit displays at places like Disneyworld, you can get a glimpse of what some of the predictions are for our lives. As we fantasize about what our life might be like a few decades from now, we can speculate about different aspects of our lives.

Personal

Clothing styles change from year to year and also from culture to culture. Do you think that we will have sleeves in our shirts and blouses? Will we wear socks to protect our feet? Will plastic gloves be used routinely as part of everyday life to avoid transmission of germs? Will we still use buttons to fasten our clothing? Will we all wear the same kind of jeans or pants (like a uniform) or will each culture be different? What textiles will be used in manufacturing our clothing? Will a type of nylon fabric be used in an effort to make our clothing more durable? Synthetic fibers which will not fade can be produced in bright colors such as pink and purple in addition to all the other colors of the rainbow.

When it comes to matters of personal cleanliness, will we soak in a bath? Will we spray ourselves with water or some other substance in a shower? Will we have a choice of which to use? Will we go to visit a barber for a haircut or will we be able to control the growth of our hair? If growth of a beard could be slowed, the daily ritual of shaving would be unnecessary for men.



QUESTIONS

1. What does the author mean when he says “If you visit displays at places like Disneyworld, you can get a glimpse of what some of the predictions are for our lives?”

2. According to paragraph 2 and 3, the future life that the author described is true or it's just the author's imagination?
3. When the author say "Do you think that we will have sleeves in our shirts and blouses?", what does he actually mean ?



NEW WORDS

fantasy ['fænt3si]	<i>n.</i>	幻想
transformation [ˌtrænsfɜːmeɪʒn]	<i>n.</i>	变化
scholar ['skɒlɜː]	<i>n.</i>	学者
speculate ['spekjuleɪt]	<i>v.</i>	推测
sleeve [sliːv]	<i>n.</i>	袖子
blouse [blaʊz]	<i>n.</i>	衬衫
plastic ['plæstɪk]	<i>a.</i>	塑料(制)的
glove [glɒv]	<i>n.</i>	手套
routinely [ruː'tiːnli]	<i>adv.</i>	例行公事地
transmission [træns'mɪʒn]	<i>n.</i>	传播
fasten [ə'fɪːsɜːn]	<i>v.</i>	扣紧
jeans [dʒiːnz]	<i>n.</i>	牛仔裤
pants [pænts]	<i>n.</i>	短裤
textile [ˈtekstail]	<i>n.</i>	纺织品
nylon ['naɪlɒn]	<i>n.</i>	尼龙
fabric [ə'fæbrɪk]	<i>n.</i>	织物
synthetic [sɪn'θetɪk]	<i>a.</i>	合成的
fibre / fiber ['faɪbɜː]	<i>n.</i>	纤维(物质)
fade [feɪd]	<i>v.</i>	褪色
rainbow ['reɪnbɒu]	<i>n.</i>	彩虹
soak [sɒk]	<i>v.</i>	浸泡
spray [spreɪ]	<i>v.</i>	喷
barber ['bɑːbɜː]	<i>n.</i>	理发师
beard [biːd]	<i>n.</i>	胡须
shave [ʃeɪv]	<i>v. & n.</i>	刮(脸), 剃



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

look ahead	预测未来, 展望未来
take place	发生
get a glimpse of	瞥见, 瞅见
speculate about	考虑, 推测
from year to year	每年地
in addition to	除……之外, 还……

NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. The scholars who make it their business to try to predict the future are not all in agreement about what the future holds. 未来到底有些什么特征，以预测未来为职业的学者们意见也并非一致。

who make it their business to try to predict the future 为后置定语，用来修饰 The scholars。

predict 预言，预测，预示

e.g. They predicted great things for the boy. 他们预言这孩子有出息。

be not all in agreement about 意见不完全一致

2. As we fantasize about what our life might be like a few decades from now, we can speculate about different aspects of our lives. 当我们幻想从现在开始几十年后我们的生活会是什么样子时，我们会推断出我们生活的各个方面。

fantasize about 幻想关于……

e.g. What do you fantasize about doing with your spare time? 你梦想利用自己的业余时间做什么？

decade 十年；a few decades 几十年

3. Will a type of nylon fabric be used in an effort to make our clothing more durable? 是否会有更耐用的尼龙布？

in an effort to 为了完成/达成

durable 持久的，耐用的



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

fantasy	scholar	speculate	transmission	fasten
nylon	synthetic	soak	spray	substance

- He thinks a _____ is more respectable than a street cleaner.
- A: Why do you wear _____ stockings?
B: Because they keep my legs warm.
- She lived in a world of _____.
- This house is _____ in memories.
- I wouldn't like to _____ on the reasons for her resignation.
- More _____ materials are being introduced.
- This means that farmers could _____ these crops with herbicide and kill the weeds, without affecting the crop.

8. There is no _____ is his speech.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

look ahead	take place
get a glimpse of	speculate about
from year to year	in addition to
come to	raise a family
fantasize about	in an effort to

1. we must _____ before we make a decision.
2. Where does the conversation most probably _____?
3. We can't go back to the days of Senior Middle School when we only studied diligently all day long, so now just _____ those days makes me feel horrible.
4. We should _____ the purpose of his words.
5. The prices of fruits and vegetables fluctuate _____, according to the change of seasons and the market quotations.
6. _____ their academic work, children in the United States are offered a wide range of activities in the after-school hours.
7. A deliberate scarcity of farm products was planned _____ raise prices.
8. Most of the Post-'90 generation youngsters prefer _____ the wonderful future to working hard immediately.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 他推测这可能是他的最后一次机会了。
2. 如果某些事被例行公事地做着，那么它就被当做是正常的过程或者工作来做了。
3. 木匠将门底边刨去了一点使它正好关上。
4. 除了付租金，租房子通常还要付所谓的公用事业费，即煤气、电力、暖气及热水和简单的电器修理及其他修理费。
5. 谈到德语，我一窍不通。

Section B



TEXT

Future or Fantasy? (2)



Transportation

Will we float over highways or drive on the road surface as we do now? Will the cost of a gallon of fuel still be our concern? What will our vehicles look like? Will the profile of our automobiles look like the shape of space age aircraft? Will the notion of using paint to protect the car's exterior be obsolete? Perhaps the coating on the car will give a durable shine and we will never to wax or polish it. What kind of battery will we use to power our car? Will we still have a mechanic repair our car at a service garage or will robots that are computerized do it? Will the motor be powered by a new kind of petroleum product or by hydrogen? Will the cars still be equipped with horns as a warning signal or will a new device be available? Will there be a gauge to warn us if our speed is too fast or will radar be used to guide the car so that driver error is no longer a concern?

Electronics

Will we be able to play any musical instrument such as a guitar easily with a process the machine teaches us? Will other media, such as movies, be interactive? Will we have access to optical discs that can be played by laser? Digital images will more closely imitate reality. They will be so realistic that it will be virtually impossible to tell them from the real thing. Our enjoyment of watching a video will be enhanced by the quality of the images. Will we have equipment capable of manipulating ideas, eliminating the need for journalists to write and edit the news? Will computer software be available to modify what we type so that our errors are corrected automatically? Will computer hardware include massive amounts of memory that will allow us to file an enormous amount of material?

Will we be in the habit of carrying a small device with us that can be used as a cell phone, a fax, a microphone and an internet connection?

Summary

Look at the world around you and consider some of the concepts discussed in this document. Careful observation will lead you to the conclusion that many of these things have already happened. I urge you to reread each paragraph of this article to see if perhaps they are all things that are available somewhere in the world currently. If that is the case, then you will agree that the future is now!



QUESTIONS

1. How does the author feel about the future transportation?
2. According to paragraph 2, what possibly is the author's meaning by saying "Will we be in the habit of carrying a small device with us that can be used as a cell phone, a fax, a microphone and an internet connection?"

3. “Careful observation will lead you to the conclusion that many of these things have already happened.” What are the things referred in this text that had already come true in our daily life?



NEW WORDS

gallon ['gæl3n]	n.	加仑
aircraft ['43kr1:ft]	n.	航空器
notion ['n3u73n]	n.	观念
exterior [eks'ti3ri3]	n.	外表
wax [wæks]	v.	给……上蜡
polish ['p6li7]	v.	磨光
battery ['bæt3ri]	n.	电池(组)
mechanic [mi'kænik]	n.	机修工
petroleum [pi'tr3uli3m]	n.	石油
hydrogen [3haidr3d=3n]	n.	氢气
horn [h6:n]	n.	喇叭
signal ['sign3l]	n.	信号
radar ['reid1:]	n.	雷达
error ['er3]	n.	差错
electronic [ilek'tr6nik]	a.	电子的
guitar [gi't1:]	n.	吉他
optical ['6ptik3l]	a.	光(学)的
disc/ disk [disk]	n.	唱片
digital ['did=it3l]	a.	数字的
realistic [ri3'listik]	a.	逼真的
virtually ['v3:t7u3li]	ad.	实质上
enhance [in'h1:ns]	v.	增加, 加强
journalist ['d=3:n3list]	n.	新闻记者
edit [3edit]	v.	编辑
software ['s6ftw43]	n.	软件
modify ['m6difai]	v.	更改
hardware ['h1:dw43]	n.	硬件
massive ['mæsiv]	a.	大量的
file [fail]	v.	把……归档
device [di'vais]	n.	装置
cell [sel]	n.	细胞
fax [fæks]	n.	传真机
microphone ['maikr3f3un]	n.	麦克风
summary ['s2m3ri]	n.	总结
document ['d6kjum3nt]	n.	文件
observation [;6bz33vei73n]	n.	观察(结果)
paragraph ['pær3gr1:f]	n.	段落



PHRASES & EXPRESSIONS

space age	太空时代
equip with	配备
have access to	(有权) 使用
be available to	可被……利用或得到的
tell... from...	辨别……
an enormous amount of	大量的
be in the habit of doing	有做……的习惯



NOTES TO THE TEXT

1. Will the notion of using paint to protect the car's exterior be obsolete? 使用油漆保护车子外表的观点会过时吗?

exterior 外表; 外部的。反义词为 interior 内部; 里面的

obsolete 已不用的, 已废弃的, 过时的

e.g. These goods are obsolete and will not fetch much on the market. 这些货品过时了, 在市场上卖不了高价。

2. Will we have equipment capable of manipulating ideas, eliminating the need for journalists to write and edit the news? 我们会有能够处理思想而不再需要记者去编写新闻的设备吗?

be capable of doing 能够, 有能力做某事

此处为 Will we have equipment that is capable of manipulating ideas 的省略用法, capable of manipulating ideas, eliminating the need for journalists to write and edit the news 为省略了 that 的后置定语修饰 equipment。



EXERCISES



Vocabulary Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the words given below. Change the form where necessary.

notion	wax	battery	hydrogen	signal
optical	digital	enhance	modify	hardware

- In order to transmit the _____ from there, the broadcast center has to compress it.
- The industrial revolution _____ the whole structure of English society.
- Some people consider the _____ bomb a very fatal weapon which could kill somebody.
- Present _____ fibres are made from silica glass.
- My car _____ has run down; it needs recharging.

6. We must _____ combat preparedness.
7. There's a _____ watch on the table.
8. The _____ that all stress makes you sick also ignores a lot of what we know about people.



Phrase Exercises

Fill in the blanks with the phrases given below. Change the form where necessary.

look like	space age
give a durable shine	tell...from
be capable of	equip with
have access to	be available to
an enormous amount of	be in the habit of doing

1. I can't _____ you _____ your twin brother, you look the same!
2. Only a few people _____ the full facts of the incident.
3. A punctual person is _____ a thing at the proper time and is never late in keeping an appointment.
4. All rooms are _____ electric heaters to keep indoor temperatures constant at 15-20.
5. What do photographs _____?
6. Some musicians recognize that not all people are equally _____ taking part in the music.
7. With _____ students, the operation of the system does involve a certain amount of activity.
8. Temporary passenger trains will _____ provide convenience for tourists during the Spring Festival.



Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 由于蜡烛（油）留下的踪迹，闯入教堂的小偷被抓住了。
2. 盖茨比其他人更早地把软件视为一个与硬件相独立的市场。
3. 目前喷气式飞机飞行速度比声速还要快。
4. 国家间通过传真、电话或卫星的连接不过需要几秒钟而已。
5. 钻石戒指发出炫目的光芒，以至于玛丽睁不开眼睛。



Cloze

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best word or phrase to fill in each blank.

It's an annual back-to-school routine. One morning you wave goodbye, and that 1 evening you're burning the late-night oil in sympathy. In the race to improve educational standards, 2 are throwing the books at kids. 3 elementary school students are complaining of homework 4. What's a well-meaning parent to do?

As hard as 5 may be, sit back and chill experts advise. Though you've got to get them to do it, 6 helping too much, or even examining 7 too carefully, you may keep them 8 doing it by themselves. "I wouldn't advise a parent to check every 9 assignment," says psychologist John Rosemond, author of *Ending the Tough Homework*. There's a 10 of appreciation for trial and error. Let your children 11 the grade they deserve.

Many experts believe parents should gently look over the work of younger children and ask them to rethink their 12. But "you don't want them to feel it has to be 13," she says.

That's not to say parents should 14 homework—first, they should monitor how much homework their kids 15. Thirty minutes a day in the early elementary years and an hour in 16 four, five, and six is standard, says Rosemond. For junior-high students it should be "17 more than a hour and a half," and two for high school students. If your child 18 has more homework than this, you may want to check 19 other parents and then talk to the teacher about 20 assignments.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A) very | B) exact | C) right | D) usual |
| 2. A) officials | B) parents | C) experts | D) schools |
| 3. A) Also | B) Even | C) Then | D) However |
| 4. A) fatigue | B) confusion | C) duty | D) puzzle |
| 5. A) there | B) we | C) they | D) it |
| 6. A) via | B) under | C) by | D) for |
| 7. A) questions | B) answers | C) standards | D) rules |
| 8. A) off | B) without | C) beyond | D) from |
| 9. A) single | B) piece | C) page | D) other |
| 10. A) drop | B) short | C) cut | D) lack |
| 11. A) acquire | B) earn | C) gather | D) reach |
| 12. A) exercises | B) defects | C) mistakes | D) tests |
| 13. A) perfect | B) better | C) unusual | D) complete |
| 14. A) forget | B) refuse | C) miss | D) ignore |
| 15. A) have | B) prepare | C) make | D) perform |
| 16. A) classes | B) groups | C) grades | D) terms |
| 17. A) about | B) no | C) much | D) few |
| 18. A) previously | B) rarely | C) merely | D) consistently |
| 19. A) with | B) in | C) out | D) up |
| 20. A) finishing | B) lowering | C) reducing | D) declining |



Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each of the following questions.

I'm usually fairly skeptical about any research that concludes that people are either happier or unhappier or more or less certain of themselves than they were 50 years ago. While any of these statements might be true, they are practically impossible to prove scientifically. Still, I was struck by a report which concluded that today's children are significantly more anxious than children in the 1950. In fact, the analysis showed, normal children ages 9 to 17 exhibit a higher level of anxiety today than children who were treated for mental illness 50 years ago.

Why are America's kids so stressed? The report cites two main causes: increasing physical isolation—brought on by high divorce rates and less involvement in community, among other things—and a growing perception that the world is a more dangerous place.

Given that we can't turn the clock back, adults can still do plenty to help the next generation cope. At the top of the list is nurturing (培育) a better appreciation of the limits of individualism. No child is an island. Strengthening social ties helps build communities and protect individuals against stress.

To help kids build stronger connections with others, you can pull the plug on TVs and computers. Your family will thank you later. They will have more time for face-to-face relationships, and they will get more sleep.

Limit the amount of viral (虚拟的) violence your children are exposed to. It's not just radio games and movies; children see a lot of murder and crime on the local news.

Keep your expectations for your children reasonable. Many highly successful people never attended Harvard or Yale.

Make exercise part of your daily routine. It will help you cope with your own anxieties and provide a good model for your kids. Sometimes anxiety is unavoidable. But it doesn't have to ruin your life.

1. The author thinks that the conclusions of any research about people's state of mind are.
A) surprising C) illogical B) confusing D) questionable
2. What does the author mean when he says, "we can't turn the clock back"(Line 1, Para.3)?
A) It's impossible to slow down the pace of change.
B) The social reality children are facing cannot be changed.
C) Lessons learned from the past should not be forgotten.
D) It's impossible to forget the past.
3. According to an analysis, compared with normal children today, children treated as mentally ill 50 years ago _____.
A) were less isolated physically
B) were probably less self-centered
C) probably suffered less from anxiety

- D) were considered less individualistic
4. The first and most important thing parents should do to help their children is _____.
A) to provide them with a safer environment
B) to lower them expectations for them
C) to get them more involved socially
D) to set a good model for them to follow
5. What conclusion can be drawn from the passage?
A) Anxiety, though unavoidable, can be coped with.
B) Children’s anxiety has been enormously exaggerated.
C) Children’s anxiety can be eliminated with more parental care.
D) Anxiety, it properly controlled, may help children become mature.

Section C



动名词（二）

四、动名词的时态和语态

动名词的时态和语态如表 14.1 所示。

表 14.1 动名词的时态和语态

主动语态	被动语态
一般式 doing	being done
完成式 having done	having been done
其否定形式一般式是 not doing 完成式否定形式是 not having done	

1. 动名词的时态

1) 一般式

通常是一般性动作，即不是明确地发生在过去、现在或将来的动作，或是与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生的动作。

I hate talking with such people. 我讨厌与这样的人说话。

Being careless is not a good habit. 粗心不是一个好习惯。

2) 完成式

表示的动作发生在谓语动词动作之前。

I don’t remember having met him before. 我记不得以前见过他。

Thank you for having taking so much trouble to help. 谢谢你费力帮忙。

2. 动名词被动语态

动名词的逻辑主语同时也是动名词动作的承受者，动名词用被动语态。

1) 一般式

表示动作与谓语动词同时发生，或在其前发生。

I don't like being laughed at in public. 在公共场合下，我不喜欢被别人嘲笑。

2) 完成式

表示动作发生在谓语动词之前。

I am very pleased at your having been honoured with a medal. 我很高兴你能获得这样的奖牌。

3) 某些动词中，常用动名词的一般式表示完成式。

Excuse me for being late. 我来晚了请你原谅。

I don't remember ever meeting somewhere. 我记不得原来在什么地方见过。

五、动名词与不定式的区别

1. 不定式通常表示具体或某次要去做什么；动名词通常表示习惯、状态，或对过去事情的描述。

I like to see the film this evening. 我今天傍晚想看电影。(具体或某次)

I like seeing the film. 我喜欢看电影。(习惯)

2. 有些动词后既可加不定式，也可加动名词，如 remember, forget, regret, try, stop, go on, mean 等，但意义不同。

1) remember to do 记着去做某事；remember doing 曾做过某事。

I remembered to post the letters. 记着把这封信邮走。

I remembered posting the letters. 我记得邮过这封信。

2) forget 与 remember 的用法类似。

3) regret to do 遗憾去做某事；regret doing 遗憾曾做过某事。

I regret to inform you that... 我很遗憾地通知你……

I regretted having left the firm after twenty years. 我很遗憾 20 年前离开公司。

4) try to do 努力做某事；try doing 试着做某事。

You must really try to overcome your shyness. 你必须努力克服你的害羞。

Try practicing five hours a day. 试着一天练习 5 个小时。

5) mean to do 打算做某事；mean doing 意味着。

6) stop to do 停下来去做某事；stop doing 停止做某事。

7) go on to do 继续做另一件事；go on doing 继续做同一件事。

六、动名词与现在分词的区别

1. 动名词和现在分词都可以用于系动词之后作表语，区别方法如下。

1) 作表语的动名词与主语指的是同一件事，此时系动词相当于“是”，通常把主语和表语的位置互换，语法和意思不变。

My hobby is swimming. 可改为 Swimming is my hobby. (可将原句中的主语与表语位置互换)

2) 现在分词作表语主要用以说明主语的性质，不能与主语互换位置。

The story is interesting. 不可改为 Interesting is the story.

2. 动名词和现在分词都可以用作定语来修饰名词，两者的区别在于：

动名词修饰名词时主要表示该名词的用途，而现在分词修饰名词的性质、状态或动作等，试比较：

1) a swimming boy 和 a swimming suit

前者的意思是“一个正在游泳的男孩”，即 a boy who is swimming, 现在分词 swimming 表示被修饰名词 boy 的动作；而后者的意思是“游泳衣”，即 a suit for swimming, 动名词 swimming 表示 suit 的用途。

2) a sleeping child 和 a sleeping car

前者的意思是“一个正在睡觉的孩子”，即 a child who is sleeping, 现在分词 sleeping 表示被修饰名词 child 正处于的状态；而后者的意思是“卧车”，即 a car which is used for sleeping, 动名词 sleeping 表示 car 的用途。



Grammar Exercise

A Fill in the blanks with the proper forms.

1. Mark often attempts to escape _____ (fine) whenever he breaks traffic regulation.
2. My wife said in her letter that she would appreciate _____ (heart) from you sometime.
3. The thief took away the woman's wallet without _____ (see).
4. Tony, would you go and see if Sam has any difficulty _____ (fix) his tape recorder?
5. He kept _____ (put off, write) to his parents.
6. No one can avoid _____ (influence) by advertisements.
7. They are considering _____ (buy) before the prices go up.
8. How can you keep the machine _____ (run) when you are away?
9. If I had remembered _____ (lock) the door, the things would not have been stolen.
10. Your shirt needs _____. (iron). You'd better have it done today.
11. With apples at 25 cents a pound, we couldn't resist _____ (take) four pounds.
12. My transistor radio isn't working. It needs _____ (repair).
13. It is no use _____ (you, tell) me not to worry.
14. He is very busy _____ (write) his papers. He is far too busy _____ (receive) callers.
15. The suspect at last admitted _____ (receive) stolen goods but denied _____ (sell) them.
16. She apologized for _____ (she, not, be) able to come.

B Choose the one answer that best completes the following sentences.

1. _____ did I understand what she meant?
A) Only then B) Then C) When D) At that time
2. The master said, "This is the last time _____ I shall give you a lesson."
A) which B) in which C) when D) who
3. Little Franz hardly knew how to recite the grammar rules, _____?

-
- A) did he B) did not he C) does he D) doesn't he
4. All I want to do right now is _____ him.
- A) see B) seeing C) seen D) to see
5. The master told us he would question us _____ verbs.
- A) about B) in C) on D) from
6. He is seriously ill .His doctor said he is _____ of death.
- A) at the edge B) on the edge C) at an edge D) on an edge
7. I had hoped to be able to take my seat in all this noise without _____.
- A) seeing B) seen C) being seen D) be seeing
8. All the pupils had the master's words _____ their minds.
- A) impressed upon B) impressing upon
C) impress upon D) be impressed upon
9. Seldom _____ to see him after that.
- A) his friend came B) his friend comes
C) did his friend come D) came his friend
10. I have no money _____.
- A) with which to buy the car B) to buy the car with it
C) with it to buy the car D) to buy the car

词 汇 表

A

abandon [3'bænd3n]	v.	抛弃	6-A
aboriginal [;æb3'rid=3n3l]	a.	土著的; 原始的	7-B
	n.	土著居民; 土生生物	
abound [3əbaund]	v.	富于, 充满	8-B
absurd [3b's3:d]	a.	荒唐的	3-B
academic [;æk3ədemik]	a.	学术的; 学院的	8-B
academy [3'kæd3mi]	n.	专业学校	4-A
accumulate [3'kju:mjuleit]	v.	积累; 积聚	10-A
acquaintance [3'kweint3ns]	n.	认识的人; 熟人	10-A
adolescence [;æd3u'les3ns]	n.	青春期; 青春	10-A
adore [3'd6:]	v.	崇拜, 爱戴	4-A
advantage [3d'v1:ntid=]	n.	优势	5-B
adventurer [3d'vent73r3]	n.	冒险家; 投机商人	7-B
afflict [3'flikt]	v.	使苦恼, 折磨	1-A
aircraft ['43kr1:ft]	n.	航空器	14-B
alcohol ['ælk3h6l]	n.	含酒精的饮料	9-A
alcoholic [;ælk3əh6lik]	a.	酗酒的, 酒精的	13-A
	a.	陌生的; 外国的	
alien ['eilj3n]	n.	外星人	12-B
alike [3'laik]	ad.	一样地	4-A
ally [3'lai]	n. & v.	同盟国; 伙伴; 同盟者; 联合; 结盟	7-B
alongside [3'l6ŋ 'said]	prep.	在……的旁边, 与……并排	5-A
anchor [ə5ŋ k3]	v.	停航下锚	2-A
annual ['ænju3l]	a.	每年的, 一年一次的	12-A
anticipation [æn;tisi'pei73n]	n.	期望	10-B
apologetic [3;p6l3əd=etik]	a.	道歉的	2-B
apparent [3'pær3nt]	a.	明显的, 显而易见的	7-A
approval [3'pru:v3l]	n.	赞成; 同意	10-B
arched [1:t7t]	a.	拱的; 拱形的	8-A
architect ['1:kitekt]	n.	建筑师; 设计者	8-B
architecture ['1:kitekt73]	n.	建筑学; 建筑风格; 建筑式样	8-B
assail [3əseil]	v.	纠缠	2-A
assignment [3əsainm3nt]	n.	任务, 作业	10-B
asterisk ['æst3risk]	n.	星号 (*)	5-B
astounding [3s't6ni7i9]	a.	惊人的; 令人惊讶的	7-B
athlete ['æ0li:t]	n.	运动员	12-B
atmosphere ['ætmsfi3]	n.	气氛; 大气	8-B

atmospheric [ˌætɪm3s'ferɪk]	<i>a.</i>	大气的, 空气的; 大气层的, 大气中的	7-A
attend [3'tend]	<i>v.</i>	出席; 参加	11-B
available [3'veɪl3bl]	<i>a.</i>	有效的, 可得的; 可利用的	9-B
avenue ['ævɪnju:]	<i>n.</i>	选择; 途径; 手段	10-B

B

balance ['bæl3ns]	<i>n.</i>	平衡; 收支平衡	9-A
barber ['b1:b3]	<i>n.</i>	理发师	14-A
bare [b43]	<i>a</i>	赤裸的	4-A
bargain [əb1:ɹɪn]	<i>v.</i>	讨价还价	2-A
barrier ['bæri3]	<i>n.</i>	障碍; 阻力	10-B
battery ['bæt3ri]	<i>n.</i>	电池 (组)	14-B
beard [bi3d]	<i>n.</i>	胡须	14-A
bedraggled [biədræg3ld]	<i>a.</i>	拖泥带水的	2-B
behaviour [biəheɪv3]	<i>n.</i>	行动, 举止	3-B
bequeath [bi'kwɪ:ð]	<i>v.</i>	遗赠; 把……遗赠给; 把……传下去	8-B
bet [bet]	<i>n.</i>	打赌	4-A
biological [baɪ3əl6d=ɪk3l]	<i>a.</i>	生物的	8-A
bitterly ['bɪt3li]	<i>v.</i>	厉害地	4-A
blame [bleɪm]	<i>v.</i>	责怪	5-B
blouse [blauz]	<i>n.</i>	衬衫	14-A
bonfire [ˌbɒnəfaɪ3]	<i>n.</i>	大火堆, 篝火	12-B
boom [bu:m]	<i>v.</i>	急速发展; 发隆隆声	7-B
boxer ['bɒks3]	<i>n.</i>	拳击手	4-A
boxing [əbɒksɪŋ]	<i>n.</i>	拳击	4-A
breathtaking [ˌbreɪ0əteɪki9]	<i>a.</i>	令人赞叹的	8-A
broiled [brɔɪld]	<i>a.</i>	烤过的	9-A
bullion ['bulj3n]	<i>n.</i>	金条; 银条	6-B

C

caffeine ['kæfi:n]	<i>n.</i>	咖啡碱, 咖啡因; (兴奋剂) 茶碱	9-A
canal [k3'næl]	<i>n.</i>	运河	8-B
cancel ['kænsəl]	<i>v.</i>	取消	5-B
candidate ['kændɪdɪt]	<i>n.</i>	候选人, 申请职位者	13-A
candy [əkændɪ]	<i>n.</i>	糖果	9-A
canned [kænd]	<i>a.</i>	罐装的, 听装的	9-A
capture ['kæptʃ3]	<i>v.</i>	俘获; 捕获	11-B
cargo ['k1:g3u]	<i>n.</i>	货物	6-B
carve [k1:v]	<i>v.</i>	雕刻	12-B
catastrophe [k3'tæstr3fi]	<i>n.</i>	大祸, 灾难	5-A
cathedral [k3ə0i:dr3l]	<i>n.</i>	大教堂	8-A
cell [sel]	<i>n.</i>	细胞	14-B

charity ['tʃæritɪ]	<i>n.</i>	慈善, 施舍, 慈善团体, 慈善机构	11-A
chest [tʃest]	<i>n.</i>	大箱子	6-B
cholesterol [kɒl'lestʃrɒl]	<i>n.</i>	胆固醇	9-A
chug [tʃʊg]	<i>v.</i>	咔嚓咔嚓地响	5-B
circulation [ˌsɜːkju'leiʃn]	<i>n.</i>	循环	7-A
circumstance ['sɜːkɪsmstʌns]	<i>n.</i>	(usually pl.) 条件; 环境; 状况	10-A
claim [kleɪm]	<i>v.</i>	声称; 断言; 宣称	10-B
cliché [ˌkliːʃeɪ]	<i>n.</i>	陈词滥调	4-B
collide [kə'laid]	<i>v.</i>	猛撞	5-A
collision [kə'liʒn]	<i>n.</i>	碰撞	6-A
colossal [kə'lɒsl]	<i>a.</i>	庞大的	6-A
combative [əkəm'bɪtɪv]	<i>a.</i>	好斗的	3-B
comedian [kə'miːdiən]	<i>n.</i>	滑稽演员, 喜剧演员	1-B
comic ['kɒmɪk]	<i>a.</i>	喜剧的, 可笑的	1-B
comical ['kɒmɪkəl]	<i>a.</i>	好笑的; 滑稽的	12-B
commemorate [kə'memə'reɪt]	<i>v.</i>	纪念	12-A
comment ['kɒment]	<i>n.</i>	议论; 评论	11-B
commercial [kə'mɜːʃl]	<i>a.</i>	商业的	8-B
commercialize [kə'mɜːʃlaɪz]	<i>v.</i>	使商业化, 使商品化	12-A
commit [kə'mɪt]	<i>v.</i>	做出; 犯	12-B
comparable ['kɒmpərəbl]	<i>a.</i>	可比较的; 类似的	7-A
compartment [kəm'pɑːtmənt]	<i>n.</i>	(轮船的) 密封舱	6-A
compensate [əkəm'penseɪt]	<i>v.</i>	补偿	1-B
competitive [kə'mpetɪtɪv]	<i>a.</i>	竞争性的	3-B
complaint [kəm'pleɪnt]	<i>n.</i>	抱怨	5-B
complicated ['kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd]	<i>a.</i>	(结构) 复杂的	13-A
component [kəm'pɒnənt]	<i>n.</i>	成分; 组成部分	10-A
conceited [kən'siːtɪd]	<i>a.</i>	自高自大的	4-B
concrete [əkən'kriːt]	<i>a.</i>	具体的, 确实的	10-A
condition [kən'dɪʃn]	<i>v.</i>	使习惯于	5-B
conduct [kən'dʌkt]	<i>v.</i>	引向, 引导	5-B
confirm [kən'fɜːm]	<i>v.</i>	证实, 证明, 确认	10-B
confusion [kən'fjuːʒn]	<i>n.</i>	混乱	5-A
conscience ['kɒnʃəns]	<i>n.</i>	良心; 良知	11-A
conscious ['kɒnʃəs]	<i>a.</i>	感觉到的, 意识到的	2-B
consequence [əkɒnsɪkwɒns]	<i>n.</i>	后果, 结果	1-A
consequently ['kɒnsɪkwɒntli]	<i>ad.</i>	因此, 所以	7-A
consist [kən'sɪst]	<i>v.</i>	由……组成	9-A
console [kən'səʊl]	<i>v.</i>	安慰, 慰问	1-B
constantly ['kɒnstəntli]	<i>ad.</i>	始终; 一直; 重复不断地	10-A
consult [kən'sʌlt]	<i>v.</i>	请教, 查阅	5-B
contain [kən'teɪn]	<i>v.</i>	包含; 容纳; 装有	9-A
contemplate [ˌkɒntem'pleɪt]	<i>v.</i>	考虑; 思量	11-B
contemporary [kən'tempərəri]	<i>n. & a.</i>	同时代的人; 同时代的, 当代的	12-A

contempt [kɒn'tempt]	<i>n.</i>	蔑视	1-A
content [kɒntənt]	<i>n.</i>	内容	10-B
contents ['kɒntents]	<i>n.</i>	(复数) 所装的东西	6-B
contest [əkɒntest]	<i>n.</i>	比赛	3-B
contract ['kɒntrækt]	<i>n.</i>	合同; 合约	11-B
convenience [kɒn'vi:njəns]	<i>n.</i>	方便	9-A
convenience food		方便食品	9-A
convention [kɒn'venʃn]	<i>n.</i>	习俗, 风俗	2-B
conversely [kɒn'vɜ:sli]	<i>ad.</i>	相反地; 反过来	10-A
convoy ['kɒnvɔi]	<i>n.</i>	护航	6-B
cookie ['kuki]	<i>n.</i>	饼干	9-A
cosmic ['kɒzmik]	<i>a.</i>	宇宙的	4-B
costume ['kɒstju:m]	<i>n.</i>	服装; 装束	12-B
cousin ['kʌzn]	<i>n.</i>	堂兄 (或弟、姐、妹); 表兄 (或弟、姐、妹)	12-A
cove [kɒv]	<i>n.</i>	小湾, 小海湾	7-B
credit ['kredit]	<i>n. & v.</i>	信用, 信誉; 信任; 把……归给, 归功于	7-B
creed [kri:d]	<i>n.</i>	信条	13-B
cricket [əkrɪkɪt]	<i>n.</i>	板球	3-B
crockery ['krɒkəri]	<i>n.</i>	陶器, 瓦器	5-A
crucial ['kru:ʃl]	<i>a.</i>	至关重要的; 关键性的	10-A
crude [kru:d]	<i>a.</i>	粗野的	4-A
cruiser ['kru:zə]	<i>n.</i>	巡洋舰	6-B
curiosity [ˌkjʊəri'ɒsɪti]	<i>n.</i>	好奇心	11-A
customary ['kʌstəməri]	<i>a.</i>	习俗的; 习惯的	12-B
cynical ['sɪnikəl]	<i>a.</i>	怀疑的, 愤世嫉俗的	13-B
cynicism ['sɪnɪsɪzəm]	<i>n.</i>	嘲讽, 讥笑	13-B

D

dawdle ['dɔ:dl]	<i>v.</i>	慢吞吞地动或做	5-B
deck [dek]	<i>n.</i>	甲板	2-A
decoration [ˌdekə'reɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	装饰, 装饰品	8-B
deduce [di'dju:s]	<i>v.</i>	推断	3-B
define [di'fain]	<i>v.</i>	界定, 下定义	13-A
delay [di'lei]	<i>n.</i>	耽误	3-A
deliberately [di'libərɪtli]	<i>ad.</i>	故意地	1-A
democracy [di'mɒkrəsi]	<i>n.</i>	民主, 民主制, 民主精神	13-B
derive [diəraɪv]	<i>v.</i>	(从……中) 得到, 获得	10-A
device [di'vaɪs]	<i>n.</i>	装置	14-B
devil ['devl]	<i>n.</i>	魔鬼; 恶棍	12-B
devotion [di'vɒʃn]	<i>n.</i>	热爱	4-B
devour [di'vaʊə]	<i>v.</i>	狼吞虎咽地吃	5-A
digital ['dɪdʒɪtəl]	<i>a.</i>	数字的	14-B
dignity ['dɪgnɪti]	<i>n.</i>	尊严	1-A

direct [di'rekt]	<i>ad.</i>	径直地	5-B
disastrous [di'z1:str3s]	<i>a.</i>	灾难性的	7-A
disc/ disk [disk]	<i>n.</i>	唱片	14-B
discount ['diskaunt]	<i>v.</i>	打折	12-A
disembark [;disiməb1:k]	<i>v.</i>	下船上岸	2-A
disgrace [dis'greis]	<i>v.</i>	使丢脸	3-B
dislocate ['disl3keit]	<i>v.</i>	打乱 (计划等)	5-B
disregard [;disriəɹ1:d]	<i>v.</i>	不顾, 漠视	2-B
distasteful [dis'teistf3l]	<i>a.</i>	讨厌的	1-B
document ['d6kjum3nt]	<i>n.</i>	文件	14-B
donate ['d3uneit]	<i>v.</i>	捐赠, 赠与	11-A
doubtful ['dautf3l]	<i>a.</i>	怀疑的, 可疑的	13-B
drain [drein]	<i>n.</i>	地下水道	8-A
dread [dred]	<i>v.</i>	惧怕	1-B
dreary ['driəri]	<i>a.</i>	沉闷的	4-B
drought [draut]	<i>n.</i>	干旱; 缺乏	7-A
dump [d2mp]	<i>v.</i>	把……砰的一声抛下; 倾倒	2-B
duplicate ['dju:plikit]	<i>v.</i>	复制	8-A

E

ease [i:z]	<i>n.</i>	容易	1-A
eccentric [ikəsentrɪk]	<i>n.</i>	(行为) 古怪人	2-B
eccentricity [;eksənətrisiti]	<i>n.</i>	怪僻	2-B
edifice [ædifɪs]	<i>n.</i>	大厦, 建筑物	8-A
edit [ædɪt]	<i>v.</i>	(为出版、广播等而) 编辑	14-B
elaborate [iələʊb3r3t]	<i>a.</i>	精心构思的	2-B
election [i'lek73n]	<i>n.</i>	选举, 当选	13-A
electronic [ilek'tr6nik]	<i>a.</i>	电子的	14-B
elegant ['elig3nt]	<i>a.</i>	雅致的, 优美的	8-A
ember ['emb3]	<i>n.</i>	余烬	12-B
embrace [im'breis]	<i>v.</i>	抱; 拥抱	10-B
eminent ['emin3nt]	<i>a.</i>	著名的, 杰出的	4-A
enduring [in'dju3riŋ]	<i>a.</i>	持久的, 不朽的	13-B
enhance [in'h1:ns]	<i>v.</i>	增加, 加强	14-B
enterprise ['ent3praiz]	<i>n.</i>	企业; 事业; 进取心; 事业心	7-B
entitle [in'taitl]	<i>v.</i>	称做……; 定名为……; 给……称号	8-B
envious ['envi3s]	<i>a.</i>	嫉妒的	1-A
episode ['epis3ud]	<i>n.</i>	插曲; 一段情节	7-A
Equator [iəkweit3]	<i>n.</i>	赤道	3-A
era [ɜ3r3]	<i>n.</i>	时期, 时代	3-A
error ['er3]	<i>n.</i>	差错	14-B
escalate ['esk3leit]	<i>v.</i>	逐步升高	12-A
essential [iəsən73l]	<i>a.</i>	极其重要的; 必不可少的	10-A

ethnic ['e0nik]	<i>a.</i>	种族的	9-A
eventually [i'ventju3li]	<i>ad.</i>	最后, 终于	10-B
evil ['i:vl]	<i>a.</i>	恶毒的; 邪恶的	12-B
exceptional [ikəsep73nl]	<i>a.</i>	例外的, 异常的; 优越的	8-B
exceptionally [ik'sep73n3li]	<i>ad.</i>	例外地	5-B
exchange [iks't7eind=]	<i>n. & v.</i>	交换	12-A
exotic [eg'z6tik]	<i>a.</i>	异国的; 外来的	9-B
explanation [;ekspl3'nei73n]	<i>n.</i>	解释, 说明	12-A
express [iks'pres]	<i>n.</i>	快车	5-B
	<i>a.</i>	高速的	
exquisite ['ekskwizit]	<i>a.</i>	精致的	8-A
exterior [eks'ti3ri3]	<i>n.</i>	外表	14-B
extravagant [iks'træv3g3nt]	<i>a.</i>	浪费的, 奢侈的	4-A

F

fabric [ɜfæbrik]	<i>n.</i>	织物	14-A
fade [feid]	<i>v.</i>	褪色	14-A
faint [feint]	<i>a.</i>	微弱的	6-A
faith [fei0]	<i>n.</i>	信任	5-B
fame [feim]	<i>n.</i>	名声	4-A
fantasy ['fænt3si]	<i>n.</i>	幻想	14-A
fascinate ['fæsineit]	<i>v.</i>	使着迷, 使极感兴趣	13-A
fasten [ɜf1:s3n]	<i>v.</i>	扣紧	14-A
fatuous ['fæt7u3s]	<i>a.</i>	愚蠢的	4-B
favorable ['feiv3r3bl]	<i>a.</i>	有利的; 良好的	7-B
favour ['feiv3]	<i>n.</i>	好处, 优惠	2-A
fax [fæks]	<i>n.</i>	传真机	14-B
fearful ['fi3f3l]	<i>a.</i>	惧怕的, 担心的	13-B
feature [fi:t73]	<i>n.</i>	特写, 专题报道	13-A
feedback ['fi:dbæk]	<i>n.</i>	反馈	11-B
fertile ['f3:tail]	<i>a.</i>	肥沃的, 富饶的	8-B
feudal ['fju:dl]	<i>a.</i>	封建制度的, 封建时代的; 领地的; 世仇的	8-B
fibre / fiber ['faib3]	<i>n.</i>	纤维 (物质)	14-A
file [fail]	<i>v.</i>	把……归档	14-B
find [faind]	<i>n.</i>	找到的物品	6-B
fit [fit]	<i>v.</i>	安装	3-A
float [fl3ut]	<i>v.</i>	漂浮, 飘浮	6-A
flood [fl2d]	<i>v.</i>	充满水	6-A
foresight ['f6:sait]	<i>n.</i>	先见, 远见; 预见; 深谋远虑	7-B
formula ['f6:mjul3]	<i>n.</i>	配方	8-A
foundation [faun'dei73n]	<i>n.</i>	建立, 创办; 基础; 基金	13-A
fraction ['fræk73n]	<i>n.</i>	小部分; 少量; 一点儿	11-A
fried chicken		炸鸡	9-A

frozen [əfrʒuzn]	<i>a.</i>	冻结的, 冷冰的	9-A
fundamental [ˌfʌndəmentl]	<i>a.</i>	基本的; 重要的, 必要的	13-B
fundamentals [ˌfʌndəmentl]	<i>n.</i>	基本原则	4-B
furthermore [ˌfɜːðəmə:]	<i>ad.</i>	此外, 而且	8-B

G

gallon ['gælən]	<i>n.</i>	加仑	14-B
garbage ['gɜːbɪdʒ]	<i>n.</i>	垃圾; 废物	12-B
garlic ['gɜːlɪk]	<i>n.</i>	大蒜	9-A
genius ['dʒiːnɪʒs]	<i>n.</i>	天才, 天赋; 精华	13-B
gesticulate [dʒes'tɪkjuleɪt]	<i>v.</i>	(讲话时) 打手势	2-A
girder ['gɜːdɜː]	<i>n.</i>	(大) 梁	8-A
gleam [gli:m]	<i>v.</i>	闪闪发光	8-A
glitter [æɪlɪtɜː]	<i>v.</i>	闪闪发光	8-A
glorious ['glɒːrɪs]	<i>a.</i>	光辉灿烂的	4-B
glove [glʌv]	<i>n.</i>	手套	14-A
goodwill [ˌgʊdəwɪl]	<i>n.</i>	友好	3-B
Gothic ['gəʊtɪk]	<i>a.</i>	哥特式的	8-A
gradually ['grædʒuəli]	<i>ad.</i>	逐渐地	12-A
gratitude ['grætitjuːd]	<i>n.</i>	感谢; 感激	12-A
greedily ['griːdɪli]	<i>ad.</i>	贪婪地	5-A
grudge [grʌdʒ]	<i>v.</i>	不愿给, 舍不得给	1-A
guitar [gi'tɜː]	<i>n.</i>	吉他	14-B

H

hamburger ['hæmbɜːgɜː]	<i>n.</i>	汉堡包	9-A
hardware ['hɜːdwɜː]	<i>n.</i>	(计算机的) 硬件	14-B
hatred ['heitrɪd]	<i>n.</i>	仇恨, 憎恶	3-B
hobble ['hɒbl]	<i>v.</i>	瘸着腿走	1-B
horn [hɜːn]	<i>n.</i>	喇叭	14-B
horror [ə'hɒrɜː]	<i>n.</i>	恐惧	6-A
hot dog		热狗 (面包夹熏红肠)	9-A
hot-tempered ['hɒt.tempɜːd]	<i>a.</i>	性急的, 易怒的, 暴躁的	13-A
hydrogen [ə'hɑɪdrɜːdʒn]	<i>n.</i>	氢气	14-B

I

iceberg ['aɪsbɜːg]	<i>n.</i>	冰山	6-A
identify [aɪ'dentɪfaɪ]	<i>v.</i>	确认; 认出; 找到	11-B
identity [aɪ'dentɪtɪ]	<i>n.</i>	身份	4-B
illusion [ɪ'luːʒn]	<i>n.</i>	错觉, 假象	10-B
imperial [ɪm'piəriəl]	<i>a.</i>	皇帝的; 至高无上的	8-B
imposing [ɪm'pɜːzɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	庄严的	8-A

impressive [im'presiv]	<i>a.</i>	给人深刻印象的	3-A
inaccurate [inəækjurit]	<i>a.</i>	不准确的, 不精确的	9-A
inclination [;inkliənei73n]	<i>n.</i>	意愿	3-B
inclined [in'klaɪnd]	<i>a.</i>	想 (做某事); 有……倾向; 很可能	11-B
indispensable [;indiəspens3b3l]	<i>a..</i>	不可缺少的; 绝对必要的; 责无旁贷的	7-B
inflation [in'fleɪ73n]	<i>n.</i>	通货膨胀	11-A
ingredient [in'gri:di3nt]	<i>n.</i>	因素, 要素	10-A
inhabit [in'hæbit]	<i>v.</i>	居住在; 栖居于	10-B
innocent ['in3snt]	<i>a.</i>	纯真的; 清白的	10-B
inquire/ enquire [in'kwai3r]	<i>v.</i>	询问, 打听	11-B
inscribe [inəskraib]	<i>v.</i>	刻写, 雕	2-A
inspire [in'spai3]	<i>v.</i>	激发; 启发	12-B
instinct [əɪnstɪŋ kt]	<i>n.</i>	本能; 天性	11-A
intelligence [in'telɪd=3ns]	<i>n.</i>	智力, 智慧; 理解力	13-A
intensely [in'tensli]	<i>ad.</i>	强烈地	2-B
intensify [inətensɪfai]	<i>v.</i>	(使) 加强, 增强, 加剧	10-A
intensity [in'tensiti]	<i>n.</i>	强度, 密集度; 强烈	7-A
interlocking [ɪnt3əɪl6ki9]	<i>a.</i>	交织在一起的	8-A
intimate [əɪntɪmit]	<i>a.</i>	亲密的; 密切的	10-A
intricate ['ɪntrɪkɪt]	<i>a.</i>	错综复杂的	10-B
invariably [ɪnəve3ri3bli]	<i>ad.</i>	总是, 经常地	2-B
invisible [ɪn'vɪz3bl]	<i>a.</i>	看不见的	12-A
item ['aɪt3m]	<i>n.</i>	物件	6-B

J

jeans [d=i:nz]	<i>n.</i>	牛仔裤	14-A
Jesus ['d=i:z3s]	<i>n.</i>	耶稣	7-A
journalist ['d=3:n3list]	<i>n.</i>	新闻记者	14-B
junk food		垃圾食物	9-A
jut [d=2t]	<i>v.</i>	突出	8-A

L

landfall ['lændf6:l]	<i>n.</i>	着陆; 初见陆地; 到达陆地	7-B
landscape [ələəndskeɪp]	<i>n.</i>	风景, 景色	7-B
largely [əɪl:d=li]	<i>ad.</i>	在很大程度上	1-B
lean [li:n]	<i>a.</i>	瘦的; 肉 (无脂肪的)	9-A
learner [l3:n3]	<i>n.</i>	初学者	5-A
leave [li:v]	<i>n.</i>	允许	4-B
legacy [əleg3si]	<i>n.</i>	遗赠, 遗产	8-B
legend ['led=3nd]	<i>n.</i>	传说; 传奇故事	12-B
legendary ['led=3nd3ri]	<i>a.</i>	传奇般的	2-B
liberty ['lib3ti]	<i>n.</i>	自由, 自主	13-B
lifeboat ['laɪfb3ut]	<i>n.</i>	救生船	6-A

liner ['lain3]	<i>n.</i>	班船	6-A
linkage [əliŋkid=]	<i>n.</i>	联系; 连锁; 联动	7-A
liter ['li:t3]	<i>n.</i>	(= litre) 公升 (容量单位)	7-B
lodge [lɒd=]	<i>v.</i>	提出	5-B
lookout ['luk'aut]	<i>n.</i>	瞭望员	6-A
lovable ['lɒv3bl]	<i>a.</i>	可爱的	2-B
luxury ['lʌk73ri]	<i>n.</i>	奢侈, 奢华; 奢侈品; 享受	7-B

M

magnet ['mæɡnit]	<i>n.</i>	磁铁	11-B
magnificent [mæg'nifisnt]	<i>a.</i>	壮丽的; 宏伟的	8-A
magnitude ['mæɡnitju:d]	<i>n.</i>	巨大; 广大; 积; 量	7-A
mainstream ['meinstri:m]	<i>n.</i>	(思想或行为的) 主流	13-A
malnutrition [;mælnjuətri73n]	<i>n.</i>	营养失调, 营养不良	9-B
mansion [əmən73n]	<i>n.</i>	大厦; 宅邸	8-B
manufacturer [;mænju'fækt73r3]	<i>n.</i>	制造商	12-A
marble [əmə'l:bl]	<i>n.</i>	小玻璃球	2-A
mariner ['mæriŋ3]	<i>n.</i>	海员, 水手; 航海者	7-B
marquis ['m1:kwis]	<i>n.</i>	侯爵	4-A
mash [mæʃ]	<i>v.</i>	磨碎, 捣烂	12-A
massive ['mæsiv]	<i>a.</i>	大量的	14-B
match [mætʃ]	<i>v.</i>	匹配	8-A
mean [mi:n]	<i>a.</i>	吝啬, 小气	4-B
mechanic [mi'kænik]	<i>n.</i>	机修工	14-B
merchandise ['m3:t73ndaiz]	<i>n.</i>	商品	12-A
merchant ['m3:t73nt]	<i>n.</i>	商人	12-A
merit ['merit]	<i>n.</i>	优点, 价值	11-A
meteorological[;mi:ti3r3'lɒd=ikl]	<i>a.</i>	气象的	8-A
metropolitan [;metr3əp6lit3n]	<i>n.</i>	大都市的	8-B
microphone ['maikr3f3un]	<i>n.</i>	麦克风	14-B
mighty ['maiti]	<i>a.</i>	强大的, 有力的	5-B
mimic warfare [ə'mimik əw6:fe3]		模拟战争	3-B
ministry ['ministri]	<i>n.</i>	(政府的) 部	6-B
minor ['main3]	<i>a.</i>	较小的; 次要的	11-B
miss [mis]	<i>v.</i>	避开	6-A
modify ['mɒdifai]	<i>v.</i>	更改	14-B
monotonous [m3'nɒt3n3s]	<i>a.</i>	单调的; 无变化的	9-B
mount [maunt]	<i>v.</i>	安装	8-A
multiply ['mʌltiplai]	<i>v.</i>	成倍增加; 迅速增加	11-A
mumble ['mʌmbəl]	<i>v.</i>	喃喃而语	1-B
mutually ['mjʊ:tʌ3li]	<i>ad.</i>	相互地; 彼此; 共同地	10-A

N

narrowly ['nær3uli]	<i>ad.</i>	刚刚, 勉强地	6-A
---------------------	------------	---------	-----

nature ['neɪtʃ]	<i>n.</i>	大自然	1-A
naval ['neɪvəl]	<i>a.</i>	海军的	6-B
nephew ['nefju:]	<i>n.</i>	侄子, 外甥	12-A
nevertheless [ˌnevəðʒəles]	<i>ad.</i>	尽管如此; 不过; 然而	10-A
niece [ni:s]	<i>n.</i>	侄女, 甥女	12-A
noble ['nɒbl]	<i>a.</i>	高尚的; 贵族的	8-B
notion ['nɒʃn]	<i>n.</i>	观念	14-B
notorious [nəʊ'tɪrɪəs]	<i>a.</i>	声名狼藉的; 臭名昭著的	12-B
nutrition [nju:'triʃn]	<i>n.</i>	营养	9-A
nutritional [nju:'triʃnl]	<i>a.</i>	营养的, 滋养的	9-A
nylon ['naɪlɒn]	<i>n.</i>	尼龙	14-A

O

obligated ['ɒblɪgeɪt]	<i>a.</i>	(道义或法律上)有义务的, 有责任的, 必须 的	11-A
observation [ˌɒbzə'veɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	观察(结果)	14-B
observatory [ɒbzə'zɜ:vətɔ:ri]	<i>n.</i>	天文台; 气象台	8-A
observe [ɒb'zɜ:v]	<i>v.</i>	庆祝; 庆贺; 欢度	12-B
obtain [ɒb'teɪn]	<i>v.</i>	(尤指经努力)获得, 赢得	10-A
oceanic [ˌɜ:ʃi'ænik]	<i>a.</i>	海洋的	7-A
odd [ɒd]	<i>a.</i>	奇怪的, 异常的	5-B
optical ['ɒptɪkəl]	<i>a.</i>	光(学)的	14-B
option ['ɒpʃn]	<i>n.</i>	选择	11-A
orgy ['ɔ:d=i]	<i>n.</i>	无节制, 放荡	3-B
oscillation [ˌɒsɪ'leiʃn]	<i>n.</i>	波动; 震动; 震荡	7-A
outback ['aʊtbæk]	<i>n.</i>	内地	7-B
outlook [ə'aʊtlʊk]	<i>n.</i>	观点; 见解; 世界观; 人生观	10-A
outrageous [aʊ'reɪdʒəs]	<i>a.</i>	出人预料的; 残暴的	2-A
outstanding [aʊ'tstændɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	杰出的; 显著的	8-B

P

paleolithic [ˌpæliθəli'ɒɪk]	<i>a.</i>	旧石器时代的	7-B
panic ['pænik]	<i>n.</i>	惊慌, 恐慌	5-A
panorama [ˌpænə'ɜ:rl:m]	<i>n.</i>	全景	8-A
pants [pænts]	<i>n.</i>	短裤	14-A
paradise ['pærədaɪs]	<i>n.</i>	天堂	8-B
paragraph ['pærəgrɑ:f]	<i>n.</i>	段落	14-B
passer-by	<i>n.</i>	过路人(复数 passers-by)	1-A
patriotism ['pætriətɪzəm]	<i>n.</i>	地方观念, 爱国主义	3-B
pension [ə'penʃn]	<i>n.</i>	养老金; 抚恤金; 退休金	11-A
pester ['pestə]	<i>v.</i>	一再要求, 纠缠	1-B
petroleum [pi'trɒliəm]	<i>n.</i>	石油	14-B
phenomenon [fɪ'nɒmɪnəm]	<i>n.</i>	现象(pl. phenomena)	7-A

philosopher [fɪ'lɒsəfɜː]	<i>n.</i>	哲学家	1-A
piece [piːs]	<i>v.</i>	拼成整体	6-B
pizza ['piːtsɜː]	<i>n.</i>	意大利肉饼, 比萨饼	9-A
plank [plæŋk]	<i>n.</i>	大块木板	3-A
plaster [ˈplɪːstɜː]	<i>n.</i>	熟石膏	1-B
plastic ['plæstɪk]	<i>a.</i>	塑料(制)的	14-A
plunge [plʌndʒ]	<i>v.</i>	投入, 跳入	6-A
poise [pɔɪz]	<i>n.</i>	沉着, 泰然自若	13-A
polish ['pɒlɪʃ]	<i>v.</i>	磨光	14-B
popularity [ˌpɒpjʊələˈrɪtɪ]	<i>n.</i>	名望	4-A
positive ['pɒzɪtɪv]	<i>a.</i>	自信的; 积极乐观的	10-A
postpone [pɒstə'pʊn]	<i>v.</i>	延迟; 延期	11-A
pot [pɒt]	<i>n.</i>	陶罐; 锅	2-A
potato chip		炸马铃薯薄片	9-A
poverty ['pɒvɜːti]	<i>n.</i>	贫困	4-A
prank [prɒŋk]	<i>n.</i>	玩笑; 恶作剧	12-B
precious ['preʃɪəs]	<i>a.</i>	珍奇的; 宝贵的	10-B
prelude ['preljʊːd]	<i>n.</i>	序幕, 前奏	5-A
preservation [ˌprezə'veɪʃən]	<i>n.</i>	保存, 保留	9-B
presumptuous [pri'zʌmptʃuəs]	<i>a.</i>	自以为是的, 放肆的	4-B
prevailing [priə'veɪlɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	普遍的, 盛行的, 流行的	13-A
Priest [priːst]	<i>n.</i>	牧师	1-A
primitive [ə'prɪmɪtɪv]	<i>a.</i>	原始的, 远古的	9-B
prizefighter ['praɪz.faitɜː]	<i>n.</i>	职业拳击手(尤指古时赤手拳击手)	4-A
proceed [prɒ'siːd]	<i>v.</i>	继续做	11-B
profound [prɒ'faʊnd]	<i>a.</i>	深厚的; 意义深远的; 渊博的	8-B
progressive [prɒ'ɡresɪv]	<i>a.</i>	进步的; 稳定发展的	11-B
prominent ['prɒmɪnɪnt]	<i>a.</i>	显著的, 突出的	12-A
promote [prɒ'məʊt]	<i>v.</i>	促进; 推动; 增进	13-B
prophecy ['prɒfɪsi]	<i>n.</i>	预言	10-B
prospective [prɒ'spektɪv]	<i>a.</i>	有望的; 可能的; 预期的	11-B
prosperity [prɒs'perɪtɪ]	<i>n.</i>	繁荣, 兴旺	13-B
prosperous ['prɒspɜːrəs]	<i>a.</i>	繁荣的; 兴旺的	7-B
protein ['prɒtiːn]	<i>n.</i>	蛋白质	9-A
punctual ['pʌŋktʃuəl]	<i>a.</i>	准时的	5-B

R

radar ['reɪdɜː]	<i>n.</i>	雷达	14-B
radical ['rædɪkəl, 'rædɪkl]	<i>a.</i>	根本的; 激进的	11-B
rainbow ['reɪnbəʊ]	<i>n.</i>	彩虹	14-A
rainfall ['reɪn.fɔːl]	<i>n.</i>	(降)雨量; 一场雨	7-A
raw [rɔː]	<i>a.</i>	未煮过的; 生的	9-A

reaffirm ['ri:3'f3:m]	v.	再次证明	13-B
realistic [ri3'listik]	a.	逼真的	14-B
realm [relm]	n.	领域	11-B
reception [ri'sep73n]	n.	接待	12-A
recession [ri'se73n]	n.	经济衰退; 经济萎缩	11-A
reclaim [ri'kleim]	v.	重新确立	13-B
recovery [riək2v3ri]	n.	康复	1-B
recruit [ri'kru:t]	v.	征募 (新兵), 吸收 (新成员)	11-B
red meat		红色肉类 (指羊肉, 牛肉等)	9-A
reed [ri:d]	n.	芦苇	8-A
reflect [ri'flekt]	v.	细想	5-B
refreshing [ri'fre7i9]	a.	令人耳目一新的; 使人精力充沛的	11-B
relaxation [ri:lækəsei73n]	n.	放松, 松弛; 松懈	9-A
reluctant [ri'l2kt3nt]	a.	不情愿的; 勉强的	11-A
renowned [ri'naund]	a.	著名的, 有声望的	8-B
represent [ˌrepiɹəzent]	v.	代表	8-B
representative [ˌrepiɹəzent3tiv]	a.	典型的, 有代表性的	8-B
reprimand [əreprima:nd]	v.	训斥	2-B
resign [riəzain]	v.	辞职; 辞去 (某职务)	11-A
resource [ri's6:s]	n.	资源; 财力	11-B
reveal [ri'vi:l]	v.	展示, 显露	10-B
revenue ['rev3inju:]	n.	收入	11-A
reverse [ri'v3:s]	v.	颠倒; 彻底转变; 使完全相反	11-A
rewarding [ri'w6:di9]	a.	值得做的; 有益的	10-A
ridge [rid=]	n.	山脊, 山脉	8-B
roasted ['r3ustid]	a.	烤好的	9-A
roll [r3ul]	v.	颠簸, 摇摆	3-A
rosette [r3u'zet]	n.	(建筑) 圆花窗, 圆花饰	8-A
routine [ru:'ti:n]	n.	常规; 惯例	2-B
routinely [ru:'ti:nli]	a.	例行公事地	14-A
rub [r2b]	n.	难题	4-B
rudder ['r2d3]	n.	舵	3-A

S

salad bars		色拉自助柜, 凉拌菜自助长条桌	9-A
salvage ['sælvid=]	v.	救助, 打捞, 营救	6-B
savage ['sævid=]	a.	野性的	3-B
scale [skeil]	n.	规模; 程度; 范围; 等级; 刻度	13-B
scatter ['skæt3]	v.	散布, 撒播	8-B
scholar ['sk6l3]	n.	学者	14-A
scour [əskau3]	v.	彻底搜索	6-B
seaboard ['si:b6:d]	n.	海滨; 沿海地方; 海岸线	7-B
searchlight ['s3:t7.lait]	n.	探照灯	8-A

selfishly ['selfi7li]	<i>ad.</i>	自私地, 任性地, 擅自地	13-A
semester [si'mest3]	<i>n.</i>	学期	11-B
sentinel ['sentin3l]	<i>n.</i>	哨兵	8-A
series ['si3ri:z]	<i>n.</i>	系列	5-A
settlement [əsetlm3nt]	<i>n.</i>	殖民地; 租借地; 拓居地	7-B
shave [7eiv]	<i>v. & n.</i>	刮脸	14-A
shrewd [7ru:d]	<i>a.</i>	精明的	2-B
signal ['sign3l]	<i>n.</i>	信号	14-B
silhouette [;silu:əet]	<i>v.</i>	具有……的轮廓; 为……的侧影	8-A
silverware [əsilv3we3]	<i>n.</i>	银器	2-A
skeleton [əskelit3n]	<i>n.</i>	骨骼, 骨架;	8-A
	<i>a.</i>	梗概的, 轮廓的	
sleeve [sli:v]	<i>n.</i>	袖子	14-A
slide [slaid]	<i>v.</i>	滑(slid)	5-A
slight [slait]	<i>a.</i>	轻微的	6-A
slip [slip]	<i>v.</i>	悄悄疾行; 溜	10-B
snob [sn6b]	<i>n.</i>	势利小人, 谄上欺下的人	2-B
soak [s3uk]	<i>v.</i>	浸泡	14-A
sociable ['s3u73bl]	<i>a.</i>	好交际的; 合群的; 友好的	10-A
social climber		追求更高社会地位的人, 向上爬的人	4-B
software ['s6ftw43]	<i>n.</i>	软件	14-B
solidify [s3əlidifai]	<i>v.</i>	(使) 变得坚定, 变得稳固	10-A
spark [sp1:k]	<i>v.</i>	激发	11-B
specific [spi'sifik]	<i>a.</i>	特定的	11-B
speculate ['spekjuleit]	<i>v.</i>	推测	14-A
spiritual ['spiritju3l]	<i>a.</i>	精神上的	1-A
splendid ['splendid]	<i>a.</i>	灿烂的	4-B
spray [sprei]	<i>v.</i>	喷	14-A
stage [steid=]	<i>v.</i>	暗中策划	2-B
stain [stein]	<i>v.</i>	(给木料、玻璃等) 染色, 着色	8-A
stark [st1:k]	<i>a.</i>	荒凉的, 光秃秃的, 寸草不生的	7-B
starve [st1:v]	<i>v.</i>	饿死, 挨饿	9-B
steamship ['sti:m7ip]	<i>n.</i>	蒸汽轮船	3-A
steer [sti3]	<i>v.</i>	掌握方向	3-A
stereotype ['steri3taip]	<i>n.</i>	陈规; 固定的看法	13-A
stimulate [əstimjuleit]	<i>v.</i>	刺激	10-B
stray [streɪ]	<i>a.</i>	迷失的, 离群的	5-A
strengthen [əstre903n]	<i>v.</i>	加强; 增强; 巩固	10-A
submarine [;s2bm3'ri:n]	<i>n.</i>	潜水艇	6-B
substance [əs2bst3ns]	<i>n.</i>	物质	9-A
suburb ['s2b3:b]	<i>n.</i>	郊区	5-A
suburban [s3'b3:b3n]	<i>a.</i>	见识不广的; 偏狭的	4-B
suffer [əs2f3]	<i>v.</i>	遭受, 忍受; 受痛苦	9-B
summary ['s2m3ri]	<i>n.</i>	总结	14-B

sunken ['sʌŋ kʌn]	<i>a.</i>	沉没的	6-B
superficial [ˌsuːpɜː'fiːʃl]	<i>a.</i>	肤浅的	11-A
superior [suː'piːriː]	<i>a.</i>	更好的; 占优势; 更高的	11-B
surgeon ['sɜːdʒən]	<i>n.</i>	外科大夫	1-A
suspect [sʌsə'pekt]	<i>v.</i>	怀疑, 猜想	10-B
sustain [sʌs'teɪn]	<i>v.</i>	维持 (生命、生存)	11-A
symbol ['sɪmbəl]	<i>n.</i>	象征	12-A
synthetic [sɪn'θetɪk]	<i>a.</i>	合成的	14-A

T

technically ['teknɪkəl]	<i>ad.</i>	严格根据法律意义地	4-A
temporary ['tempərəri]	<i>a.</i>	临时的	3-A
tempt [tempt]	<i>v.</i>	吸引; 引诱	2-A
tendency ['tendənsi]	<i>n.</i>	趋势	12-A
tension ['tenʃən]	<i>n.</i>	紧张, 烦躁	10-A
territory ['terɪtri]	<i>n.</i>	领土, 领域	7-B
textile [tek'staɪl]	<i>n.</i>	纺织品	14-A
Thailand ['taɪlənd]	<i>n.</i>	泰国	9-A
theory ['θiːri]	<i>n.</i>	理论, 学说, 看法	13-A
thereby ['ðəː'baɪ]	<i>ad.</i>	因此; 由此; 从而	10-B
thriving ['θraɪvɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	兴盛的; 茁壮成长的	10-A
throughout [θruː'aut]	<i>prep.</i>	遍及, 贯穿	13-A
thrust [θrʌst]	<i>v.</i>	硬塞给; 推	2-A
torpedo [tɒ'piːdʒu]	<i>v.</i>	用鱼雷攻击	6-B
tragic ['trædɪk]	<i>a.</i>	悲惨的	6-A
transformation [ˌtrænsfɜː'meɪʃən]	<i>n.</i>	变化	14-A
transmission [træns'mɪʃən]	<i>n.</i>	传播	14-A
transport [træns'pɔːt]	<i>n.</i>	运输	9-B
tremble [trembl]	<i>v.</i>	震颤	6-A
triumph ['traɪʌmf]	<i>n.</i>	胜利	5-B
tropical ['trɒpɪkəl]	<i>a.</i>	热带的	7-A
turkey ['tɜːki]	<i>n.</i>	火鸡	9-B
turnip ['tɜːnɪp]	<i>n.</i>	萝卜	12-B
typical [ə'tɪpɪkəl]	<i>a.</i>	典型的	9-A

U

underlying [ˌʌndə'laɪɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	根本的; 潜在的; 隐含的	10-B
undetected [ˌʌndɪ'tektɪd]	<i>a.</i>	未被发现的, 未被觉察的	8-A
unforeseen [ˌʌnfɜː'siːn]	<i>a.</i>	意料之外的	5-A
uninhabited [ˌʌnɪn'hæbɪtɪd]	<i>a.</i>	无人居住的, 杳无人迹的	7-B
universal [ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsəl]	<i>a.</i>	普通的	1-B

unshakable [ˌʊnˈʃeɪkəbl]	<i>a.</i>	不可动摇的	5-B
unyielding [ˌʊnˈjiːldɪŋ]	<i>a.</i>	坚硬的; 不屈的	13-B
urgent [ˈɜːdʒənt]	<i>a.</i>	紧要的; 催促的	13-A
utilize [ˈjuːtɪlaɪz]	<i>v.</i>	利用	8-A

V

vacation [veɪˈkeɪʃn]	<i>n.</i>	假期, 休假	11-A
vessel [ˈvesl]	<i>n.</i>	轮船, 大木船	3-A
veteran [ˈvetərən]	<i>a.</i>	经验丰富的; 老资格的	11-A
victory [ˈvɪktəri]	<i>n.</i>	胜利, 成功, 赢	13-B
viewpoint [ˈvjuːpɔɪnt]	<i>n.</i>	观点	10-B
vineyard [ˈvaɪnjəd]	<i>n.</i>	葡萄园	7-B
virgin [ˈvɜːdʒɪn]	<i>a.</i>	处女的; 纯洁的; 未经利用的	7-B
virtually [ˈvɜːtʃuəli]	<i>ad.</i>	事实上	14-B
virtue [ˈvɜːtjuː]	<i>n.</i>	美德	3-B
vital [əˈvaɪtəl]	<i>a.</i>	必不可少的; 对……极为重要的	10-A
vitamin [ˈvaɪtəmɪn]	<i>n.</i>	维生素	9-A
volunteer [ˌvɒlənˈtiː]	<i>v.</i>	自愿做; 义务做; 无偿做	11-A
voyage [ˈvɔɪdʒ]	<i>n.</i>	航行	6-A

W

wares [weɪəz]	<i>n.</i>	货物, 商品	2-A
watertight [ˈwɔːtətaɪt]	<i>a.</i>	不漏水的	6-A
wax [wæks]	<i>v.</i>	给……上蜡	14-B
well-preserved	<i>a.</i>	保存得很好的	8-B
whereas [weəˈræz]	<i>conj.</i>	然而	9-B
windscreen [ˈwɪndskriːn]	<i>n.</i>	(汽车的) 挡风玻璃	5-A
wisdom [ˈwɪzdəm]	<i>n.</i>	智慧	1-A
wonder [ˈwʌndər]	<i>v.</i>	想知道, 想弄明白	13-B
wreak [riːk]	<i>v.</i>	发泄, 报仇; 造成 (破坏等)	7-A

参 考 文 献

- [1] 田耀. 美国文化点滴. 天津: 天津大学出版社, 2009
- [2] 许小凡. 英语畅谈世界文化 99 主题. 北京: 企业管理出版社, 2008
- [3] 陈宏俊, 张莹, 李险峰. 英美文化体验. 北京: 中国人民大学出版社, 2008
- [4] 马德高等. 星火·贯通英语——15 篇文章贯通 4 级词汇. 北京: 新华出版社, 2004
- [5] 刘佩吉编译. 最美丽的英文. 北京: 中国对外翻译出版公司, 2007
- [6] <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Halloween>
- [7] <http://dict.cn/kuaile/78/n-5278.html>
- [8] 李思国, 金启军. 全国公共英语等级考试教程 (第三级). 北京: 高等教育出版社, 2001
- [9] 亚历山大, 何其莘. 新概念英语 (第三册)、(第四册). 北京: 外语教学与研究出版社, 2001